



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

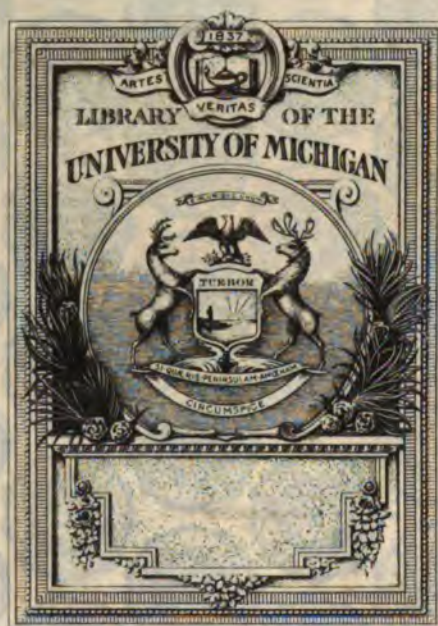
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

















2  
241  
29  
53  
1486







The  
Boke of Saint Albans

BY  
DAME JULIANA BERNERS

CONTAINING  
TREATISES ON HAWKING, HUNTING,  
AND COTE ARMOUR:

PRINTED AT SAINT ALBANS BY THE SCHOOLMASTER-PRINTER IN 1486

REPRODUCED IN FACSIMILE

With an Introduction by

WILLIAM BLADES

*AUTHOR OF "THE LIFE AND TYPOGRAPHY OF WILLIAM CAXTON"*

LONDON  
ELLIOT STOCK, 62 PATERNOSTER ROW, E.C.

1905



"Manhood I am, therefore I me delyght  
To hunt and hawke, to nourish up and fede  
The greyhounde to the course, the hawke to th' sight,  
And to bestryde a good and lusty stede."

*From SIR THOMAS MORE'S Poems.*





## Introduction.



SEVERAL independent printing presses were established in England before the close of the fifteenth century; and from them issued numerous books which are invaluable to all students of antiquity from the light they throw upon the social habits and literary progress of our nation. Of these it may safely be said that not one exceeds in interest that work of an unknown typographer, which is here presented in facsimile, and which, from the town in which it was compiled, as well as printed, is known to all bibliographers as "The Book of St. Albans." This work has always been a favourite, partly because our feelings are appealed to in favour of the writer who for centuries has taken rank as England's earliest poetess, and is still, in all our Biographical Dictionaries, reckoned among "noble authors;" and partly because we love mysteries, and a mystery has always enshrouded the nameless printer. The subjects, too, so curiously alliterative—Hawking, Hunting, and Heraldry, have an enticing and antique flavour about them, being just those with which, at that period, every man claiming to be "gentle" was expected to be familiar; while ignorance of their laws and language was to confess himself a "churl."

As to the language and orthography of the book, it is a never-failing source of interest, being quite different from any other printed work of the fifteenth century, except the St. Albans' Chronicle from the same press. Among bibliographers it ranks as "*rarissimus*," the known copies being so few that they might probably be counted on the fingers of one hand.

Looking at the book, then, all round, it will be a convenient plan to consider these subjects separately, and to treat the volume in its four aspects of Authorship, Typography and Bibliography, Subject-matter, and Philology.







**The Boke of Saint Albans**







The first is on Hawking; to this no name of the author is attached, but it has a prologue which no one acquainted with the other writings of the printer can doubt to be his. Of this we shall have more to say anon.

The second tractate is on Hunting: it is specially associated with the name of Dame Juliana Berners, and will require a more extended elucidation than the others.

Here the evidence of authorship is as good as for most pieces of fifteenth-century production—a period at which literary rights did not exist, and when the scribe, if at all acquainted with the subject upon which the book he was copying treated, did not scruple to interpolate his own ideas, and that without any egotistical vanity, but merely from a feeling that all books being written for the good of men, and not from vanity in the author, it was a duty to improve them where possible. But as improvement mostly meant the addition of something on the same subject taken from another manuscript, we have the constant occurrence of one MS. being a compilation of two or three others, and yet appearing under the name of the last compiler.

In this treatise on Hunting we have the express statement at the end of the twenty-fourth page—"Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes." This might certainly apply to the transcription only, but, when taken with Wynken de Worde's version, the probability is, that the lady compiled as well as wrote it. In the reprint by Wynken de Worde, only ten years later than the original, he varies the colophon thus:—"¶ Explicit dame Julyans Bernes doctryne in her boke of huntynge," the whole reprint ending "Enprynted at westmestre by Wynkyn the Worde the yere of thyncarnacōn of our lorde. M. CCCC. lxxxxvj." So that he, a contemporary, evidently believed her to be the authoress. Later authorities attributed the whole book to her pen, but as they were in possession of no more evidence than we now are, and probably not so much, we should attach no weight to such statements, which were founded simply on a vivid imagination.



## CHAPTER I.

### Authorship.

**H**ISTORIANS and Biographers, together with Librarians and Booksellers, have a natural antipathy to anonymous books; and, wherever they can, are willing to accept the smallest amount of evidence as proof of paternity. It saves much trouble and avoids numerous errors in cataloguing, when a recognised name can be associated with an anonymous work. From this tendency a bad habit has arisen of attributing to particular writers books concerning which the evidence of authorship is doubtful, if not altogether untrustworthy.

In this very book we have a striking instance of such erroneous attribution. The three treatises, of which the book is made up, are quite distinct, and to a portion only of one of these is there any author's name attached. Yet that name, "Dam Julyans Barnes," altered by degrees to "Dame Juliana Berners," is now universally received as the name of the authoress of the whole volume. With even less show of reason she is credited with the authorship of a "Treatise on Fishing" for which there is not the shadow of evidence, that treatise having been added ten years later by Wynken de Worde, who, when reprinting the Book of St. Albans, thought that the subject of Fishing would complete the work as a Gentleman's Vade Mecum.

There are really four distinct tractates in the Book of St. Albans, although the two last being on Heraldry are generally counted as one.



But what is known of the lady who is admitted to have compiled the twenty-four pages on Hunting? Who was Dame Julians Barnes? Here, unless a sentimental and inventive sympathy be employed to throw an artificial light upon the darkness, we are in total ignorance. A biography of her has certainly been written, and all our Dictionaries and Encyclopædias devote a page or two to her history, which, in 1810, under Haslewood's nurture, attained its full development. Even so far back as 1549, or nearly a century after her supposed death, the learned Bale, who wrote an account of all our English celebrities, allows his gallantry to bedeck her memory with garments fine. "*Fœmina illustris!*" he exclaims, "*corporis et animi dotibus abundans ac forma elegantia spectabilis*" (An illustrious lady! abundantly gifted, both in body and mind, and charming in the elegance of her mien). Considering that the name of the lady is the whole of the text upon which Bale had to build, this is by no means a bad specimen of imaginative biography, and became a good foundation for future commentators. The story, however, fared rather badly at first; for Holinshed, in 1577, while echoing Bale very exactly, is made, by a curious error of the printer, who mistook the letters *rn* for *m*, to call the authoress Julyan Bemmes; while Baker in his Chronicles, too careless even to refer to the original text, adds another blunder to the story, and, thinking that Julyan must be a man's name, dubs the authoress "a gentleman of excellent gifts, who wrote certain treatises of Hawking and Hunting."

Chauncy, in 1700 (History of Hertfordshire), restored her sex to the lady, and then set to work upon making a family history for her. His first discovery was that, being a "Dame," she was of noble blood. Finding also that the family name of Lord Berners was, in olden time, spelt occasionally Barnes, he soon supplied a father for our authoress, in the person of Sir James Berners. And so the game of making history went on merrily up to the time of Joseph Haslewood, who, in 1810, reprinted Wynken de Worde's

edition of the Book of St. Albans, and supplied a full-blown biography of the authoress, giving particulars of her birth and education, the occupations of her youthful days, and a most imposing pedigree. Let us quote Haslewood's own words: "Juryans, or Juliana, Barnes, otherwise Berners, who has been generally designated as the authoress of the present volume, is supposed to have been born, towards the latter end of the fourteenth century, at Roding-Berners, in the county of Essex. The received report is that she was the daughter of Sir James Berners, whose son was created Baron Berners, temp. Henry IV., and that she once held the situation of Priores of Sopwell Nunnery, in Hertfordshire." He then attributes to her the authorship of all four works in the Book of St. Albans. The difficulty of accounting for a lady so placed writing upon such subjects, is cleverly, if not satisfactorily settled by assuming that she passed her teens at court, partaking of the amusements of the field, and writing for her own use a commonplace book on various subjects. Then retiring through disappointment (doubtless a love affair) to a cloister, her rank raised her to the position of prioress. There in her seclusion, writing amidst the solitude of listless hours and vain regrets, she versified the general rules of sport from her own pleasant recollection, and from the diaries of her youthful happiness, which fortunately she had preserved. If we remember the mania which seized all classes for diary-keeping at the beginning of this century, when Haslewood wrote this, it will deepen our sense of humour to note that he attributes private diary-keeping to a young lady who lived *ante* 1450.

But enough of such sham biography; let us return to facts.

The word "Dame" did not in the fifteenth century, as it does now, imply any connection with a titled family, it meant simply Mistress or Mrs. Chaucer speaks of Dame Partlet in this sense; and had the Dame Juryans Barnes of the fifteenth century lived now, she would have been just "Mrs. Barnes."

Similarity of name in history, like similarity of sound in philology.

as a school-book, by which her son would learn to read, and, at the same time, become familiar with the terms of venery.

In the Bodleian Library is a small manuscript on the Terms of the Chase, the beginning of which is:—

“Mi dere fones, where ye fare, be frith or by fell,  
Take good hede in his tyme how Triftram wol tell.”

This manuscript was probably copied by some youth as a school-exercise, which would account for the following odd colophon—  
“Explicit, expliceat, ludere scriptor eat.”

Compare the above with the opening stanza of the verses we attribute to Mistress Barnes:—

“Wheresoever ye fare, by frith or by fell,\*  
My dear child, take heed how Triftram doth you tell.”†

The rest of the Oxford MS. is in similar accord with the print, but nowhere in it is there a word about Mistress Barnes.

The words “Explicit Dam Julyans Barnes” have been considered to prove that the lady was alive when the book was printed. If, however, Sir James Berners were her father, of which there is no evidence, she must have been close upon a hundred years old in 1486, as he died in 1390. But this is importing a needless difficulty into the theory, which is not rendered more probable by making the authoress and printer contemporary.

It may here be as well to say a few words about Sopwell Nunnery, over which, without a particle of evidence, our authoress is supposed to have presided. Sopwell Nunnery, Hertfordshire, was founded about 1140, under the rule of St. Benedict, and subject to the Abbot of St. Albans, from which it was not far

\* “By frith or by fell” = by forest or by plain; but see Halliwell’s Dictionary.

† Sir Triftram, the well-known knight of the Round Table, was a mighty hunter, and the great authority upon all subjects connected with the chase. Popular belief attributed to him the origin of all the special terms used in hunting, and his name was invoked to give authority to any statement upon this subject, just as in a later century the arithmetical rules of Cocker give rise to the popular phrase—“According to Cocker.”



is a will-o'-the-wisp which has led many a writer into a bog. Allowing that Lord Berners' name was sometimes spelt Barnes, is that sufficient reason for making our authorefs a member of his family? I think not.

That the greater portion of the book on Hunting was compiled by Mistrefs Barnes, is probably correct,\* and had she written much more, and produced even an original work on the subject, she would not have stood alone, even at that early period, as an authorefs. Cryftine de Pifan, two of whose works were printed by Caxton, was contemporary with Julians Barnes, and left not only numerous original writings behind her—one of which was upon the Art of War—but left her mark, and that no mean nor ignoble one, upon the political course and moral development of her countrymen. But Dame Julyans' work upon Hunting is certainly not original, as indeed very few works upon any subject were at that period. This is evident from a glance at the text and the grouping of the subjects. It begins with distinguishing the varieties of beafts and their ages; the proper names by which to designate the beafts, singly and together; on hunting and dressing a Roe, a Boar, a Hare; of flaying; of the horns of a Roebuck; of the Hart; of the seasons; of the Hare. Then follows, from another source, an interpolation of a discourse between a Master of the Hunt and his man, going over portions of the same ground again; and this ended, we get back again to the original MS. and the dismemberment of various beafts. All through, with the exception of the interpolated conversation, the text is addressed to "My deare childe." Thus we read—"Do so, my child;" "Think what I say, my son;" "My lief childer;" "Say, child, where you go? my dame taught you so." Evidently that portion was originally written for a mother to use

\* Taking Berners and Barnes to be the same word, it is curious to note—in connection with the work attributed to Dame Juliana, viz., *The Book of Hunting*—that the masters of that sport employed men called *Berners*, to be ready with relays of horses and to feed the hounds.—See Halliwell's "*Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words*."

than one manuscript in French. Haslewood gives a list of such as are in the British Museum, in several of which portions of the printed work are contained. Works on Hunting and Hawking were not uncommon in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, and are still found in all large collections of manuscripts. There were several in the libraries of the Dukes of Burgundy in the fifteenth century, and many are still extant in the national collections of England and France.

The other tractates in the volume have an origin very similar to that of the Book of Hunting. The Book of Hawking is an evident compilation from several manuscripts, which accounts perhaps for its deficiency in arrangement and want of continuity. The Book of Coat Armour also has two distinct sources in contemporary works, one of which was the "De Officio Militari" of Nicholas Upton. From this the schoolmaster copied Book IV. almost word for word, supplementing it from "The Book of the Lineage of Coat Armour," as stated already. The only other literary work which can be attributed to our printer is the extensive compilation known as the St. Albans' Chronicle or the Fructus Temporum. But neither in the Chronicle, where he simply combined two histories into one, nor in the Book of St. Albans, which is also a compilation, does the schoolmaster show any literary ability above the average of scholars of his period.

As specimens of the schoolmaster's powers of composition we annex the following, the originals of which can be seen in the ensuing facsimile pages :—

### **Prologue to the Book of Hawking.**

"In so much that gentlemen and honest persons have great delight in Hawking, and desire to have the manner to take hawks: and also how and in what wise they should guide them ordinally: and to know the gentle terms in communing of their hawks: and to understand their sicknesses and infirmities, and to know medicines for them according, and the many notable terms that be used in hawking

distant. The rule of life among the inmates was very severe, and at the first the nuns were enclosed under locks and bolts, made additionally sure by the seal, on the door, of the Abbot for the time being (Chauncy's History, p. 466). How long this lasted, and how the nuns liked it, history saith not; but, in 1338, a re-organisation had become imperative, and the Abbot of St. Albans, among other instructions, ordered that no nun should lodge out of the house, and no guest within it (Newcome, p. 468). There does not seem much scope left here for the Priorefs to take an active part in field sports, though a hundred and fifty years later, which was about the period of our "Dame," many relaxations of the strict rules may have become common. But, then, we have apparently accurate lists of all the Prioreffes of Sopwell in the fifteenth century, and the name of Juliana Barnes does not appear at all in them. The known dates are these:—In 1416, Matilda de Flamstede was Priorefs. Four years before her death, which was in 1430, she was succeeded by Letitia Wyttenham. The next whose name is known was Joan Chapell; the date of her appointment is not recorded, but as she was set aside in 1480 on account of her age, she had probably occupied the position for many years. In 1480, Elizabeth Webb succeeded Joan Chapell.

What is really known of the Dame is almost nothing, and may be summed up in the following few words. She probably lived at the beginning of the fifteenth century, and she possibly compiled from existing MSS. some rhymes on Hunting.

There is still the authorship of the other parts of the book to determine, and if similarity of wording and phraseology may be taken as evidence, they were all from one pen.

At the end of the book on Heraldry the printer has put the following—"Here endeth the book of Blasing of Arms translated and compiled together at Seynt Albons." Here we have the printer's own statement as to the origin of his text, and doubtless this, as well as the treatise on Hawking, were made up or "compiled" from more





## CHAPTER II.

### Typography and Bibliography.



OLD books must be loved, and their idiosyncrasies carefully studied, before they will yield up *all* their treasures; that done, the observant lover will obtain possession of both soul and body; he may revel in the intellectual feast provided by the author, or he may study the material and mechanical features of the books as represented by the peculiarities of paper and the habits and customs of the various printers. Then, by grouping these as a botanist does his flowers, according to their organisation into classes, orders, genera, and species, he may extract from his volumes true replies to questions which otherwise would remain hidden for ever. So true is the dictum, "The Mind it is which sees, and not the Eye alone."

Many bibliophiles, however, of education and taste have been positively blind when outside the circle of their own particular studies. So it was with the Rev. Dr. M'Neille, a well-known critic and book-collector of sixty years ago. When addressing Dr. Dibdin he wrote thus of "The Book of St. Albans"—"This book is itself useless, and only a *bon morceau* for the quizzical collector." With such feelings towards one of the most curious works which this country produced during the infancy of the printing press, it was simply impossible that the interest of its pages should be revealed to him; and however rich in divinity and *editiones principes* of the classics the library of the

both of their hawks and of the fowls that their hawks shall slay. Therefore this book following in a due form shows very knowledge of such pleasure to gentlemen and persons disposed to see it."

### **Prologue to Mistress Barnes' Compilation on Hunting.**

"Likewise, as in the Book of Hawking aforesaid are written and noted the terms of pleasure belonging to gentlemen having delight therein, in the same manner this book following sheweth to such gentle persons the manner of Hunting for all manner of beasts, whether they be beasts of Venery, or of Chace, or Rascal. And also it sheweth all the terms convenient as well to the hounds as to the beasts aforesaid. And in certain there be many diverse of them as it is declared in the book following."

### **Prologue to the Book of Coat Armour.**

"Here in this book following is determined the lineage of Coat Armours: and how gentlemen shall be known from ungentle men, and how bondage began first in angel and after succeeded in man kind, as it is here showed in process, both in the childer of Adam and also of Noe, and how Noe divided the world in three parts to his three sons. Also there be showed the nine colours in Arms figured by the nine orders of Angels, and it is showed by the foresaid colours which be worthy and which be royal; and of regalities which be noble and which be excellent. And there be here the vertues of Chivalry, and many other notable and famous things, to the pleasure of noble persons shall be showed, as the works following witness, whosoever liketh to see them and read them, which were too long now to rehearse. And after these notable things aforesaid followeth the Blasing of all manner Arms in Latin, French, and English."

So wrote the schoolmaster. Let us now see what kind of book this is typographically.

in the colophon, "Here endith this present Chronicle . . . compiled in a book and also enprinted by our sometime Schoolmaster of St. Alban." He was a schoolmaster, then, and this will account for the nature of his early works, all scholastic and all in Latin. Not till the end of his typographical career did he realise the fact that the printing-press, instead of being the hobby of a few learned men, was the educator of the people, the whole nation; and then he gave his countrymen what they wanted—a history of their own country and a book upon the whole (secular) duty of the gentleman, as then understood.

The name of the schoolmaster-printer is quite unknown. No notice of him is found in the records of the Abbey, nor does he appear in any contemporary document. Yet here, as in Mistress Barnes's case, imagination has come to the rescue and a legendary name has been provided.

Finding that the Prologue to the Book of Hawking began with the words, "*Infomuch* as gentle men and honest persons have great delight in Hawking;" finding also that the St. Alban's Chronicle from the same press began thus: "*Infomuch* as it is necessary;" and bearing in mind that certain old authors had veiled *their* names in the first words of their works, Dr. Chauncy arrived at the sagacious conclusion that the St. Albans printer wished to veil *his* name, which really was "Infomuch." The joke, for it almost seems like one, does not bear even the scrutiny which itself invites, for although the schoolmaster uses the words in two other places, in neither case are they at the beginning of a chapter.\* It should be added that in this the worthy historian of Hertfordshire only followed the lead of both Bale and Pits.

Was he connected with the Abbey? I think not. There is not a word to suggest such a connection, although we may take it for granted that the Abbot and his fraternity could not have frowned upon

\* On sig. a j recto of "Cote Armour" is "Infomuch as all gentleness comes of God;" and upon sig. b iiij verso is "Infomuch that in the fifth quadrat," &c. The use of the word in these cases could have no veiled meaning, and it was probably only a peculiarity of diction which had become a habit with the schoolmaster.



worthy doctor may have been; it is evident that our Book of St. Albans could never have been aught but an alien on *his* book-shelves.

The works printed by William Caxton were almost without exception in the English tongue, while the contemporary presses of Oxford, St. Albans, and Machlinia were nearly all in Latin. Of the eight books at present known to have been printed at St. Albans, the only two in English were the "Fructus Temporum" and the work under review. The "Fructus" or St. Albans' Chronicle is the same as that printed two years previously by Caxton, with the addition of certain ecclesiastical events and Papal chronology, probably added by the printer himself to please the monks.

The Book of St. Albans' and the St. Albans' Chronicle make a class of themselves; but as it is impossible to understand their position without a glance at the other works from the same press, we will give a tabulated description of the whole eight.

BOOKS PRINTED AT ST. ALBANS IN FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

	Title of Book.	Language.	Size.	Date of Printing.	No. of Printed Leaves.	Type.	Size of Printed Page.	Signatures.	Printed Initials.	Ink.	Device.	Woodcuts.	Lines in Page.
1	Augustini Dacti elegancie	Latin	4to	n. d.	18	1	5½ × 3½	none	none	black	none	none	36
2	Laur: de Saona Rhetorica nova	Latin	4to	1480	81	2-1	5½ × 3½	signed	none	black	none	none	24
3	Albertiquest. de modo Significandi.	Latin	4to	1480	46	3-1	5½ × 3½	signed	none	black	none	none	32
4	Joan: Canonici Quest. sup. Phys. Arist.	Latin	fol.	1481	174	3	8 × 5	signed	none	black	none	none	44
5	Exempla sacre scripture	Latin	4to	1481	83	3	5½ × 3½	signed	none	black	none	none	32
6	Ant. Andreæ super Logica Aristotelis	Latin	4to	1482	335	3	5½ × 3½	signed	none	black	none	none	32
7	Chronicles of England	Engl.	fol.	1483?	295	2	8 × 5	every leaf signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32
8	The Book of St. Albans	Engl.	fol.	1486	88	2-4	8 × 5	signed	yes	black & red	with	yes	32

But who was the printer? What was his name? Was he associated with the great Abbey? and is there any internal or external evidence in his works to connect him with any other printer or any other town?

The only notice we have of the printer is an accidental one by Wynken de Worde, who, in reprinting the St. Albans' Chronicle, says

still earlier "Life of Jason;" so that we had better at once remove the whole Westminster prefs, dated and undated, to St. Albans, if such an argument is to have any force. These fragments, indeed, can only point to the fact that the copy of Boethius was bound in the printing office, as was commonly the case with the books from Caxton's prefs.

Again, Mr. Scott draws attention to the fact that a page of the St. Albans' Book, 1486, has been copied by a contemporary writer on to the blank leaves of one of Caxton's earliest books. 'Tis true; but this copying of part of one book into another, printed ten years before, has no typographical bearing whatever. Lastly, the name Causton appears in an old St. Albans' Register of the early part of the fifteenth century. But this, again, means positively nothing. Caxton's name was not at all uncommon; there were Caustons or Caxtons in nearly every English county, and I have quite a long list of them.

It is highly probable that Caxton, while at Westminster, in the van of all the literature of his day, would have communications of some sort with the important town of St. Albans; but that the two printers assisted one another in the production of books, is, so far as any evidence goes, a pure fiction.

Let us now glance at the bibliographical aspect of the book.

The work itself has no title. It is difficult in our time, accustomed as we are to "teeming millions" of books, each with its own title-page, to conceive a period when the prefs sent out works without even the shadow of a title-page. Before the invention of printing, the author simply headed his first page with the name of the work, as "Here begins the Confessio Amantis," or "Hic incipit Parvus Catho," and, without preface or more ado, the text commenced. Sometimes even this little notification was omitted, and, as in Caxton's "Jason," "The Chefs Book," "Tulle," and many other fifteenth-century books, the subject of the work had to be learned by reading the text. So it is with the book now under review; it comprises four distinct works, but to one only is there any heading, and that has the bare line "Incipit liber armorum."

the printer, or he would never have established himself. His imprints all mention the town of St. Albans, but never the Abbey, and his position was probably similar to that of Caxton, who was simply a tenant of the Abbot of Westminster, but, so far as is known, nothing more.

Was he connected with Caxton and the Westminster presses? Without a shadow of doubt I say, No! Mr. E. Scott, of the MS. department in the British Museum, has indeed strung together a number of surmises to show that the Schoolmaster was employed by Caxton, and that all the books without date or place hitherto attributed to Westminster were really printed at St. Albans. But internal evidence is against any such gratuitous assumption. There is nothing in common between the two printers in any of their habits or customs except the possession of Caxton's No. 3 type. This is the only one of Caxton's types used outside his own office (for W. de Worde, his successor in house and business, must not be regarded as a separate printer). Caxton employed it from his arrival in England in 1477 till 1484, when it makes its last appearance in the headings of "*Æsop*," the "*Order of Chivalry*," and "*The Golden Legend*." In 1485 Caxton obtained a new fount, similar in shape and character, and from that time the old No. 3 disappears to make way for the new and smaller type No. 5. This being more suited to the taste of the day, we find the larger and worn fount passing over to the country presses of St. Albans, where the Schoolmaster first uses it in 1486, being the identical year in which its successor appears in Caxton's "*Royal Book*." We may here observe that after the stoppage of the St. Albans' Press the same fount finds its way back again and is seen in W. de Worde's reprint, in 1496-97, of the two English St. Albans books. But the discovery of a copy of Caxton's *Boethius* in the old Grammar School at St. Albans, and the numerous fragments of old books extracted from its covers, are quoted as confirming the idea. Yet the book itself and all these fragments were from Westminster, not a single one being from a known St. Albans book, and they included the Caxton "*Chronicles*," 1480, the "*Dictes*," 1477, and the

The first, "The Book of Hawking," starts straight off—"This is the manner to keep Hawks," and occupies three signatures, a, b, and c, of eight leaves each, and fig. d, which has but four leaves, on purpose that this portion might be complete alone, if so desired. The same idea controlled the arrangement of "The Book of Hunting," which, beginning on fig. e j, ends with Dame Juliana's "Explicit" on the recto of fig. f iiii. This left the last seven pages of the quaternion to be filled up. Now it was a common practice, both with the scribes and with the early printers, when they got to the end of their text and found that a page or two of blank paper was left, to occupy the blank pages with such common household aphorisms or popular rhymes as came easily to the memory, or were at hand in some other book. So here the schoolmaster-printer fills up his vacant pages with a number of odd sentences and rhymes, most of which occur over and over again in numerous manuscripts of early poetry. Among others we notice the well-known:—

" Arise erly,  
 ferue God deuouteli,  
 and the world befily."  
 &c.                      &c.

Also the folks proverb:—

"Too wyues in oon hous,  
 Too cattys and oon mous,  
 Too dogges and oon boon,  
 Theis shall neu accorde oon."

Then the list of proper terms to be used by gentlemen and those curious in their speech is of very common occurrence:—

"An herde of Hertis  
 An herde of all man dere  
 A pride of Lionys  
 A sleuth of Beeris."  
 &c.                      &c.

This was evidently copied from some MS., and ends with "¶ Explicit," and nothing more. On the next page we have the proper terms for carving or dismembering beasts, fowls, and fishes, followed on the last leaf by a list of bishoprics and provinces.



Having thus filled up all his leaves, the printer begins his third subject on a fresh signature, and introduces the "Liber Armorum" with the Preface (already printed). A long work on the "Blasing of Arms" follows, beginning on fig. t f, and ending on fig. f 10.

This is extremely interesting, both in matter and in the very rude woodcut representations of armorial bearings with which the text is profusely illustrated. Except in one or two cases of uncommon tints, these are all colour-printed, as are the initials to paragraphs. In the Grenville copy, the pressman having forgotten to roll the "forme," the initials all appear in that semi-tinted state which would be the natural result of such an omission. We notice, too, that where the coats of arms require, say, three colours on one page, then the initials are also in three colours; but if only one colour is required for the arms, only one colour, and that the same, is used for the initials. Occasionally, where a peculiar colour was necessary, a brush was used to insert that tint by hand.

In workmanship the St. Albans printer, especially in the English books, is much inferior to the contemporary issue from the Westminster press. The types are worse, the arrangement worse, the presswork worse, and the ink worse. From this point of view alone, the theory that he would print for Caxton so much better than he did for himself, is not worth serious consideration.

The Book of St. Albans went through many editions, particulars of which are difficult to obtain.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1486. The Boke of St. Albans (Brit. Mus.).<br/>         149-. By Wynken de Worde "at the sygne of the Sonne."<br/>         1496. By Wynken de Worde (Brit. Mus.).<br/>         15-. By W. Powell. "Imprinted at London in Fletestrete at the sygne of George next to saynt Dunston's Church by Wyllyam Powell.<br/>         15--. By W. Copland. "Imprinted at London in Flete Street at the sygne of the Rose Garlande by Wyllyam Copland for Richard Tottell" (Brit. Mus.).</p> | <p>15-. By W. Copland. "In Lothebury" 4to.<br/>         15-. By W. Copland. "In saynt Martyns parish in the Vinetre upon the three crane wharfe."<br/>         1548? By W. Copland. "Imprynted at London in the Vyentre vppon the thre Craned Wharfe by Wyllyam Copland."<br/>         1550. By W. Powell. "Hawkynges Huntynge and Fishynge." 8vo. London.<br/>         1551? By Abraham Vele.</p> |
|--|--|

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>15—. By Henry Tab. "Imprynted at London in Paul's chyrch yarde by me Hēry Tab" (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>15—. By J. Waley. "Imprinted at London in Foster laen by Johā Waley" 4to.</p> <p>1561. By Copland. In this year Copland was fined for "a book of Hawkyng, Huntynge, and fysshynge cōtrary to the orders of this howse—iiij d" (Herbert, p. 367).</p> <p>1586. By E. Alde. 4to. (Bib. Dec.).</p> <p>1590. By John Wolfe "at the fygne of the Gunne."</p> <p>1595. By H. Lownes. "The Gentleman's Academie or the Booke of St. Albans * * * Compiled by Juliana Barnes in the year from the incarnation of Christ 1486. And now reduced into a better method by</p> | <p>G. M. (Gervase Markham). London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>1596. By Wolffe.</p> <p>1596. By Islip. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fishing," by Adam Islip. 4to.</p> <p>1596. By E. Alde. "Hawking Hunting Fowling and Fishing," by Edward Alde.</p> <p>1600. By Wolffe.</p> <p>1606. By Wolffe.</p> <p>1614. By Helme. "A Jewell for Gentry by S. T." 4to. (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>1793. "The Book of Cote Armour." London, 4to, reprinted by J. Dalloway, with an excellent introduction (Brit. Mus.).</p> <p>1810. The Boke of Hawking Hunting and Cote Armour. Hazlewood's reprint. London. 4to. (Brit. Mus.).</p> |
|--|---|

How did the schoolmaster at St. Albans obtain his types? This is a puzzling question in the present state of palæotypography. Mr. Bradshaw of Cambridge has, by unwearied study of early printed books, thrown great light upon the connection and genealogy of numerous founts used by fifteenth-century printers, and systematic attention to the minute peculiarities of each printer is doubtless the only way in which those old books can be forced to yield up their secrets; but the task is immense, and beyond the powers of any one man to complete. Some day, however, when the palæotypography of this country, as well as of the Continental presses, shall have received that full technical and philosophical analysis which time is sure to bring, the more fortunate bibliographer of the future will be able with certainty to track the footsteps and operations of the early typefounders, and will be enabled to state for certain to what extent Caxton and the St. Albans printer were their own typefounders, and to what extent and to whom they looked for outside help. As the case now stands, we can only confess our ignorance of where the St. Albans types came from.



## CHAPTER III.

### The Subjects Created.



IN the rude civilisation of the fifteenth century, a year's experience of which would send most of us to our graves, the mental occupation as well as the bodily recreation of our ancestors was almost confined to hunting and hawking. "Fishing with an Angle" came in as a bad third, being too tame a pursuit for men who were no men if not men of war. Mimic war—war on the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air—war which could be pursued in times of peace, and which yet required knowledge, patience, fortitude, and courage—this had great attractions, and we cannot wonder at the general popularity of these pursuits.

The first treatise in the following reprint is upon Hawking, a pastime essentially aristocratic from the great expense it entailed in the purchase, breeding, and maintenance of the birds. This, indeed, coupled with the diminution of game consequent on the progress of civilisation and the increase of the population, led to the gradual decadence of the sport, and nearly to its extinction in the eighteenth century, although, in very rare cases, falconry is even now practised.

As we have seen, one of the most difficult objects in hawking was to obtain an easy command of the proper vocabulary, and so at first start our author instructs us in "The manner to speak of Hawks, from the egg." We must not say a young hawk is hatched, but

"disclosed;" they do not breed but "eyer;" it was a want of culture in any falconer to say that hawks were building their nest, they "timbered" it. When the young could first leave the nest they were "Bowesses," and when they could fly they were "Branchers," and then was the time to catch and train them.

When the young were caught, which was with nets, the first thing was to "enfile" them, that is, to "take a needle and thread and sew up the eyelids," so that they "see never a dele." After a night and a day the threads were cut softly for fear of breaking the "lyddis of the ighen," then they were fed with well-washed flesh, but kept awake the next night and day, after which they were supposed to be tame, or "reclaimed."

The various diseases to which Hawks are liable are then explained, and medicines prescribed for them. Some of these are very absurd and some contradictory. Then comes a variety of terms for every movement and habit, for every limb or part of the body, and for almost every feather in the plumage. In this minute description the author begins at the feet of the bird and so works upwards, as when "Knyghttis been harnesside."

Next we are instructed how important it is to be careful of the manner of guiding the Hawk the first time it is ready to "nomme" a partridge; how to reward her by giving her the head and neck, after which on no account is she to fly again till she has "rejoiced," *i.e.*, sharpened her beak and shaken her feathers. More medicines follow, among which is how to get rid of "lies" (lice). "Take a piece of rough blanket and hold it to the fire till it is quite hot; wrap the hawk therein, and without hurting hold her 'softely and styllly' in your hands, and all the vermin will creep into the cloth." A happy thought this!

The "Gesse," or strip of leather by which the Hawk is held when carrying her on the hand, is next described, together with the creance or long line. More medicines still, and then how to treat Hawks when "in mew," or moulting, a matter of great importance. To promote

"mewing" give the flesh of a kid, a young swan, and especially rats flesh; stewed adders are also strongly recommended, or chickens which have been fed upon wheat soaked in broth of vipers.

Gout seems a common disease in various parts of the Hawk's body, which may be known by swelling and "ungladness;" also rheum and fever and blains and agrum, which last is cured by a red-hot silver needle thrust into the nostrils. Botches in the jaw should be "kutte with a knyfe." More terms follow for various habits and actions, the last paragraph being upon the variety of Bells used for Hawks. There should be two, one a "femytoyn" (semitone) below the other. "The Bells of Melen (Milan?) were the best, but," says the author, "there be now used Dutchland bells, of a town called durdright (Dordrecht), and they be passing good, sonowre (sonorous) of ringing in shrillness, and well lasting."

The whole ends with a list of various species of Hawks and their appropriateness to the various stations of life, among which are—

An Eagle for an Emperor.	A Merlyon for a Lady.
A Gersfalcon for a King.	A Goshawk for a Yeoman.
A Peregrine for an Earl.	A Sparehawk for a Priest.
A Muskyte for "an holiwater clerke."	

The second treatise is upon Hunting, and has a short preface, which probably came, like the first, from the pen of the Schoolmaster.

The work is all in metre, and evidently intended for boys to learn by heart. It begins by telling "my dere chylde" the various kinds of beast to be hunted; the changes of name they take as they grow older; the variety of horns; how to skin and dismember; the various cries and noises to be used; the seasons of hunting various beasts.

Then follow instructions how to hunt the Hare, and what to say to the hounds, who must always be addressed in French, as "arere!" when he enters the kennel-door; "this is the first word, my son, of venery." "Sa fa cy auaunt," "Sweff mon amy sweff," and other similar cries are noted down, some to be shouted twice only and some thrice,



the chief cry being "So now." The knowledge of when and how often these cries should be used was most important, as their proper use would bring "worship among all men." Here, apparently, in the midst of one essay, another is interpolated, and we are treated to a portion of some old dialogue like "The Master of the Hunt," in which the "Man" asks all sorts of questions and the "Master" replies. It might indeed be dubbed "The Hunter's Catechism." This occupies eight pages, and then we fall back upon the original rhyme again and the instructions of the Dame to "my childe," ending with the "Explicit" of Dam Julyans Barnes. Some leaves remaining to be filled up, the moral and other sentences, as already described at page 21, were added.

Perhaps the third treatise upon Coat Armour and the Blason of Arms is the most interesting portion of the book. The quaintness of some of the explanations is very amusing, and many people will find more points of sympathy, both historical and technical, with this than with the others.

The headline, "Incipit Liber Armorum," gives us at once the title of the manuscript from which the text was compiled. "Heraldry Run Mad" might indeed have been an appropriate title for this, as well as all similar tractates; for the author, in his anxiety to honour the science, does not scruple to take the reader back historically not to Noah only, but to Adam, whose spade, he tells us, was the first shield in Heraldry, and who was the first to bear Coat Armour. The argument, if it may so be called, is:—All "gentilnes" comes from God; there were originally in heaven ten Orders of Angels bearing Coat Armour, but now only nine, Lucifer with "mylionys of aungelis" having fallen out of heaven into hell and other places. As a bondman might say that all men come from Adam, so might Lucifer say he and his angels came from heaven.

Cain, for his wickedness, was the first churl, and all his offspring were churls also by the curse of God. Seth, on the other hand, was a gentleman by his father's blessing; Noah, too, was a gentleman by nature, but of his three sons, "Sem, Cham, and Jafeth," Cham, for

his unfilial conduct, was made "ungentle." The address of Noah to his three sons is curious, and is thus supplemented :—

"Of the offspring of the gentleman Japhet came Abraham, Moses Aaron, and the prophets, and also the King of the right line of Mary, of whom that gentleman Jesus was born, very God and man, after his manhood King of the land of Judah and of Jews, a gentleman by his mother Mary, and Prince of Coat Armour."

Some say that Coat Armour began at the siege of Troy, but it was of far greater antiquity than that, and was founded upon the nine Orders of Angels, who were crowned each with a diadem of precious stones—the Topaz (truth), Smaragdus (hardihood), Amethyst (chivalry), Loys (powerful), Ruby (courageous), Sapphire (wisdom), Diamond, a black stone (durable), Carbuncle (doughty and glorious). These represent Gentleman, Squire, Knight, Baron, Lord, Earl, Marquis, Duke, and Prince. Here we probably have the origin of the shape of various crowns and coronets. Everything is treated in nines, and the nine virtues and nine vices of gentleness follow, with nine rejoicings, nine articles that every knight should keep, and nine manner of gentlemen, in which we learn that the Evangelists and Apostles were all gentlemen of the right line of that worthy conqueror, Judas Machabeus, who in course of time had fallen to labour, and so were not called gentlemen. The four doctors of the Church—St. Jerome Ambrose, Augustine, and Gregory—were also gentlemen of blood and of Coat Armour. There are nine differences of Coat Armour and nine quadrats, all of which are explained. The "Blasfing of Arms" comes next, the preface to which is by the author, and not by the printer. It begins with the varieties of the Cross as borne in arms, each being illustrated by a rude woodcut printed in its proper colours, and the blason, or technical description of each is given in Latin, French, and English. All varieties of arms follow, with the mysteries of bends, engrail, borders, chequers, balls, cakes, rings, &c., offering but little which can be quoted, but forming an interesting and useful book of reference.



## CHAPTER IV.

### Philology.

**T**HERE is a strongly marked individuality in the spelling throughout all the treatises in this work. If the Hunting rhymes belong to Dam Julyans, their orthography, like the prose portions, is that of the Schoolmaster, who appears to have been a North-countryman, many words leading to that conclusion. The formation of the plural by adding the letters "is" or "ys" strikes the attention at once. Thus the plural of bells is bellis; egg, eggis; vetch, fetchis; fulmert, fulmertis; hawk, hawkys; herd, herdys; person, personys, and so on. The change of a *y* at the end of a word to an *i* is common, as onli, softeli, unthrefti; and for if; algate; awth for all the; bowke; chylder; clepit; clees; knaw; ken; yowre; and many others are Northern. As might be expected, many Anglo-Saxon and Anglo-Norman words now obsolete are found, such as benymme, blynne, byzete, canell, clepit, colver, dagon, gobbit, kawe, kydde, liggen, merde, nafethrils, nym,\* raton, and many others.

The following vocabulary will show the chief words in which peculiarity of spelling or dialect are noticeable:—

*alfe*, half

*algate*, always

*and*, used for "if"

*appillis*, apples

*arn*, are

*assone*, as soon

\* In the slang of thieves to *steal* is to *nim* at this day.

<i>awntelere</i> , antler	<i>coluer</i> , a dove	<i>fetchis</i> , vetches
<i>awth</i> , aught	<i>colode</i> , cold	<i>feldis</i> , fields
<i>awth</i> , all the	<i>cogh</i> , cough	<i>fofterys</i> , foresters
<i>barris</i> , bars	<i>contenyt</i> , contained	<i>folowys</i> , follows
<i>becstys</i> , beasts	<i>cowples</i> , couples	<i>flee</i> , flay
<i>beke</i> , beak	<i>croampe</i> , cramp	<i>forder</i> , further
<i>bellis</i> , bells	<i>currage</i> , courage	<i>forrgeet</i> , forget
<i>bene</i> , be	<i>cum</i> , <i>cumme</i> , come	<i>fofewt</i> , foft
<i>benymme</i> , take away	<i>dais</i> , days	<i>fowrith</i> , fourth
<i>blynn</i> , to cease	<i>dacon</i> , a piece	<i>fulmertis</i> , polecats
<i>boon</i> , bone	<i>dayfes</i> , daifies	<i>gedder</i> , gather
<i>bodi</i> , body	<i>deeil</i> , a portion	<i>glayre</i> , white of an egg
<i>bowellis</i> , bowels	<i>defawte</i> , default	<i>gobbit</i> , piece
<i>bott</i> , but	<i>diueris</i> , divers	<i>gres</i> , greafe
<i>bottre</i> , butter	<i>dookes</i> , ducks	<i>groyn</i> , grown
<i>bowke</i> , crooked	<i>doon</i> , do	<i>gyde</i> , guide
<i>bridde</i> , bird	<i>doys</i> , does	<i>habull</i> , able
<i>brought</i> , brought	<i>echeon</i> , each one	<i>hawkys</i> , hawks
<i>byfprenged</i> , sprinkled	<i>ech</i> , each	<i>hawtyn</i> , proud
<i>byzete</i> , gain	<i>eeg</i> , egg	<i>hakke</i> , hack
<i>call</i> , called	<i>eegis</i> , eggs	<i>haare</i> , hare
<i>calde</i> , called	<i>ellis</i> , else	<i>heepis</i> , heaps
<i>cattis flesh</i> , cat's flesh	<i>elis</i> , eels	<i>hedgis</i> , hedges
<i>canell</i> , cinnamon	<i>errabull</i> , arable	<i>herdys</i> , herds
<i>callish</i> , call (imper.)	<i>efeli</i> , easily	<i>howndys</i> , hounds
<i>chycon</i> , chick	<i>eueri</i> , every	<i>hoole</i> , whole
<i>chykynnes</i> , chickens	<i>euerofe</i> , rosewater	<i>hoold</i> , <i>holde</i> , old
<i>chooce</i> , choice	<i>euyn</i> , <i>eeuen</i> , even	<i>hoom</i> , home
<i>chylder</i> , children	<i>eyre</i> , air	<i>hudge</i> , small
<i>clepit</i> , called	<i>eygh</i> , <i>eyghen</i> , eye, eyes	<i>huntid</i> , hunted
<i>cloos</i> , close	<i>febulnefs</i> , feebleness	<i>hunterys</i> , hunters
<i>communeli</i> , commonly	<i>fehens</i> , floats	<i>hennys</i> , hens
<i>commythe</i> , cometh	<i>faukeneris</i> , falconers	<i>huicles</i> <i>oppon</i> <i>hir</i>
<i>cowntenanfis</i> , countenances	<i>feederis</i> , <i>federes</i> , feathers	<i>houghis</i>
		<i>hanylon</i> , wiles of a fox

<i>igh, ighē, iyen</i> , eye, eyes	<i>medecyne, medefyn</i> ,	<i>pennyd</i> , feathered
<i>ingraylyt</i> , engrailed	<i>medlide</i> , mingled	<i>personys</i> , persons
<i>inowgh</i> , enough	<i>meele, melis</i> , meal,	<i>pellittis</i> , pellets
<i>ilich</i> , alike	meals	<i>pike</i> , pick
<i>iren</i> , iron	<i>medill</i> , mingle	<i>proceis</i> , procefs
<i>ilke</i> , each	<i>moch</i> , much	<i>puttith</i> , putteth
<i>juse</i> , juice	<i>mony</i> , many	<i>praty</i> , pretty
<i>kawe</i> , call	<i>mowothe</i> , mouth	<i>properteis</i> , properties
<i>ken</i> , know	<i>moystour</i> , moisture	<i>quarterit</i> , quartered
<i>knaw, knawe</i> , know	<i>myddes</i> , midst	<i>rad</i> , ? afraid
<i>knottis</i> , knots	<i>mynne</i> , mine	<i>raton</i> , a rat
<i>kneys</i> , knees	<i>nasethrillis</i> , nostrils	<i>restith</i> , resteth
<i>kow</i> , cow	<i>nares</i> , nostrils	<i>rede</i> , ready
<i>knysue</i> , knife	<i>naamys</i> , names	<i>rebuket</i> , rebuked
<i>kydde</i> , known	<i>nathelefs</i> , nevertheless	<i>roys</i> , roes
<i>kyndeli</i> , natural	<i>neppe</i> , catmint	<i>roungeth</i>
<i>kut</i> , cut	<i>nettis</i> , nets	<i>rowse</i> , rouse
<i>layferly</i> , leifurely	<i>notabull</i> , notable	<i>saauue</i> , fave
<i>lew warme</i>	<i>no moo</i> , no more	<i>serven</i> , few
<i>leppys</i> , leaps	<i>nombur</i> , number	<i>femytoyn</i> , femitone
<i>leif</i> , dear	<i>not</i> , a nut	<i>se</i> , see
<i>leuer</i> , liver	<i>nyghtis</i> , nights	<i>shewys</i> , shows
<i>lies</i> , lice	<i>nym, nomme</i> , take,	<i>slau</i> , flow
<i>linne, lynne</i> , linen	taken	<i>snakys</i> , fnakes
<i>littyl</i> , little	<i>okys</i> , oaks	<i>softeli</i> , softly
<i>liggyn</i> , lie	<i>onli</i> , only	<i>somwatt</i> , somewhat
<i>luke water</i>	<i>ony</i> , honey	<i>soore</i> , fore
<i>lyddis of the ighen</i> ,	<i>ones, onys</i> , once	<i>sowre</i> , foar
eyelids	<i>oouen</i> , oven	<i>soper</i> , supper
<i>lymayall</i> , iron filings	<i>oon</i> , one	<i>sowkyng</i> , fucking
<i>looff</i> , loaf	<i>oppyn</i> , open	<i>sonnys</i> , sons
<i>maake</i> , make	<i>ordenatili</i>	<i>spanyellis</i> , spaniels
<i>mary</i> , marrow	<i>owte</i> , out	<i>snakys</i> , fnakes
<i>markeris</i> , markers	<i>parlous, perlous</i> , peril-	<i>taake</i> , take
<i>merde</i> , dung	ous	<i>takys</i> , takes



<i>tempur</i> , temper	<i>varri rede</i> , very red	<i>wroght</i> , wrought
<i>termys</i> , <i>termis</i> , terms	<i>veri</i> , very	<i>wode</i> , <i>wold</i> , would
<i>tho</i> , <i>thei</i> , they	<i>unthrefti</i> , unthrifty	<i>wight</i> , swift
<i>thridde</i> , third	<i>vreyne</i> , urine	<i>woddys</i> , woods
<i>theyem</i> , them	<i>warbellith</i> , warbelleth	<i>wylis</i> , while
<i>threis</i> , thrice	<i>watt</i> , what	<i>yche</i> , each
<i>theys</i> , thighs	<i>weere</i> , where	<i>yghes</i> , eyes
<i>togeyder</i> , together	<i>weere</i> , weary	<i>yolow</i> , yellow
<i>toon</i> , two	<i>ware</i> , were	<i>yowre</i> , your
<i>tweys</i> , twice	<i>wengys</i> , wings	<i>yowris</i> , yours
<i>tymeli</i> , timely	<i>whaan</i> , when	
<i>thredis</i> , threads	<i>whote nat</i> , wot not	

We have now traced the various aspects in which this curious work may be viewed. There is not one of them that would not repay much deeper study, and the reader will, doubtless, sympathise with the writer in the wish that more could be discovered concerning the schoolmaster-printer. That his pioneer attempts to establish a printing press met with many discouragements was a matter of course; and, doubtless, he had many technical, business, and even social difficulties to overcome; for a reading public had to be created and patronage was scantily afforded. Nevertheless he struggled on for at least seven years, as we learn from the dates on his books, and whatever may have been his shortcomings, either as author or as printer, the fact of his having been one of the earliest promoters in this country of the grandest discovery which the mind of man has yet made, will unite all of us in honouring the memory and respecting the name, shadowy though it be, of the "Scole mayster of St. Albion."

WILLIAM BLADES.







**I**n so moch that gentill men and honest per:sones haue gre:ete delite in haukyng and desyre to haue the maner to take haukys: and also how and in what wyse they shulde gyde theym ordynateli: and to knowe the gentill termys in communynge of theyr haukys: and to vnderstande theyr sekeneſes and enſurmes: and also to knowe medicines for theym accordyng. and many notabull termys that ben vsed i haukyng both of their haukys and of the fowles that their haukys shall sle. Therefore this booke folowynge in a delib forme shewys veri knowlege of suche plesure to gentill men and yfsonys disposed to se it.

**T**his is the maner to begynne to kepe haukys: bot not all maner haukys. bot onli Goshaukys: and Ter:celles of Goshaukys. and spare haukys. and in what maner they shall be take.

**T**he maner to speke of haukis fro an egg to thei be habill to be takene.

**N**ow to speke of haukys. first they ben Egges. and after wards they bene disclosed haukys. and communeli gos haukys ben disclosed. as sone as the choughs and in some place more tymeli after the contre is of hert. and tymeli breedynge.

**A**nd we shall say that haukis doon Eyer. and not brede: in the Woodes. And we shall say that haukys doon drab when they be tymberynge to their nestes. and not they beld ne make thei nestes And in the tyme of their loue they call. and not haue. And we shall say that they feed.

**A**nd when they bene enclosed and begyneth to fede any thyng of lengthe Anoon be kynde they will drab somwhat out of the nest: and drab to howis. and come agayn to thei nest

And then thay be clepit **Bolles** **¶** And after saynt Margarettis day thay wilt flie fro tree to tree . And then thay bene cald **Bolboncheris** . And then it is time for to take hem  
**¶** And .viij. nightis be fore saynt Margarettis day e .viij. nightis after is beste takyng of spere balles .

**H**ow ye shall demeyn yow i takyng of hawkis  
& with wat instrumentis & how ye shall hide them

**W**ho so wilt take balles he must haue nettis wich ben tal-  
led corines and tho must be made of good small threde .  
and it had need to be died othe green or blis for espyng of the  
balke . and he most take wich hym neede and threde to ensile the  
balles that ben taken . And in this maner they must be ensiled .  
Take the neede and threde : and put it throu the ouer igh lid  
and so of that othe . and make hem fast vnder the beke : thatt  
she se neuer a deit and then she is ensiled as she adthe to be .  
Sum wsen to ensile hem with the neede igh lide a bone the beke  
on the be almost : bot that is the wors way For of reson the  
ouer igh lide closith more iustly then the nethe be cause of the  
largeness . When she is ensiled then lere thi balke home on thi  
fiste and cast hir on a perch and let hir stande the a night and  
a day and on that othe day towarde euen . then take and cut esle  
the threds and take hem a way softeli for brekyng of the lyddis  
of the ighen . Then soft and faire begynne to fede her . and fair  
fare wich her till she wilt sitte well vpon the fiste . For it is dre  
de for hurtynge of hir benyngs . And then the same night after the



feedinge Make her all nyght and the morow all day. Then she  
will be praisynge ynough to be reclaimed. And the first meete that  
she shall see: lett it be hoot. and geue her ynough ther of

## Whan yowre hawke may be drawe to reclayme and the maner of hir dyette

**A**nd if yowre hawke be harde pryncyd: she may be drawne  
to be reclaimed. For all the while that she is tender pryncyd:  
she is not habill to be reclaimed. ¶ And if she be a Gos-  
hawke or Tercell that shall be reclaimed euer feede hym With Ra-  
she meete at the drawyng. and at the reclaymyng. but loke that  
hit be hoot. and in this maner Washe it. Take the meete and go  
to the Water and strike it upp and drowne in the Water. and Brin-  
ge the Water oute. and feede her ther With and she be a braden  
cher. And if it bene an Eyeffe thow most Wash the meete clen-  
ner than ye doo to the bradencher. and With a linnen cloth wipe it  
and feede her. And euermore the thrid day geue her castyng When  
she is flyng if she be a Gos-hawke or Tercell in this maner:  
Take new blanket cloth and cut. x. pellettis therof of an in-  
che longe. And take the flesh and cut. x. morcellis: and With  
a lymes poynt make an hoole in eueri morcell. and put therein  
the pellettis of cloth. and take a fair dish With Water and put  
hem therein. Then take the hawke and geue her a morcell of hoot  
meete the molentynallnes of half hir soop. Then take hit that  
lyth in the Water. and feede her for all nyght.

**H**ow ye shall fede yowre hawke. and to knowe  
his infirmitie. & ther bene many diueris of them

**I**f yowre halke be a spere halke : euer fede his With con  
Wast meet and looke that his castyng be plumage. than  
looke that it be cleyn vnder the perch. and in the mowthe ye shal  
fynde the castyng vnder the perch. and ther ye shall knowe wher  
ther the halke be cleyn or noo. For sum gobbit Wilt be polob  
and sum grene. and sum glaymous. and sum cleyn And if itt  
be polob she engenderith the frounce. the Wyche is an euell that  
Wilt rife in the molbothe or in the cheke And if it be grene she  
engenderith the Ry. The condicion of this euell is this. it Wilt  
arise in the herte and make the herte to swell. & the ypen all glay  
mous. and dyke. and bot it haue helpe : it Wilt dolne in to the  
legges. and make the legges to rancle. and if it goo fro  
the legges in to the herte a gayne. thi halke is bot loose. And  
if it be glaymous and roping she engenderith an euell calid the  
Cmy. that is Whan an halke may not murese

**M**erke wele yowre medicines here folowynge

**A** medicine for the frounce i the mowth

**T**ake a siluer spoone and put the small ende in the fyre till it  
be hote. Then let holde the halke and oppyn his beke and bryn

the foote and anoynte it With the maye of a goose that bathe  
 lyne longe . and she shall be hool . And if the frounce be Deep  
 as greete as a nose . Then ther is a grubbe ther in . and then  
 thou most cutt it With a Rasur in this maner . Lette hoolde the  
 halke : and flitte ther the foote is . and thou shalt fynde ther  
 as it Ware the malke of a pæron . Take it oute all hool . and  
 take a payre of sheetes and cutt the hool of the foote . and ma-  
 ke it as faye as ye may With a lymne cloth . and Wipe clene  
 the bloode a Day . and anoynt the foote With halme . iiii . daies  
 arede and afterwarde With poppyen . till it be hool .

### How the frounce comynge .

The frounce comynge When a man fedith his halke With  
 Porkes or cattisflesh . iiii . daies to grete

### How the Ry comynge .

For defaule of hote meete this scheweth the Ry comynge .

### How the Cray comynge .

The Cray comynge of Rash meete the Wich is Rash With  
 hote Water in the defaule of hote meete . Also it comynge

of therdie the Wch ben in the flesch that the halke is fede With  
For though thow pike the flesch neuer so cleane . yet thow shalt  
fynde thredes ther in.

## When thy hawke shall bathe hym .

**A**nd euermore ech thredes day let thy halke bathe hym . all  
the somer 'if it be mete Bedes . and enys in a Bede in Wynter  
if it be fyre Bether . and not ellis . And when thow bathe thy  
halke : euer geue hy a morast of hoots mete sonwasth though  
she bene a Goshalke .

## How ye may cause yowre hawke to flye with a courage in the morow.

**I**f ye will that yowre halke flye in the morowtide . fede hy  
the nyght before With hoots mete . and wash thesame mete in  
weyne and dryng out the Water cleane . and that shall make  
hy to haue lyst and courage to flie i the morow in the best maner

## How ye shall gyde yow if yowre hawke be full goorged and ye wode soone haue a flight .

**I**f yowre halke be full goorged . and that ye wold soone wy

pon haue a flighte take . iij . cornes of Rhye . and put hem in a  
mortell of flesch : and geue thessame morcellie to the balke . and  
she will cast anon all that she hath with in her . and anon af-  
ter that she hath cast looke ye haue a mortell of hootte meete  
to geue hir **A**nd if yowre balke be ouer goozged . geue hir  
theffame medecyn .

### **A medecyne for the Rye**

**T**ake sayes leupes . and stampe hem in a morter . and bryn-  
ge out the Juse . and with a pinne put it in the balles nares  
Ones or threes When the balke is smalle goozged . and a non  
after let hir lye . and she shall be hool as a feth **O**r ellis  
take percelli Rootis and serue hir with thepem in thessame ma-  
ner . and When she tyeth hote cell i yowre hode with the spring  
and that shall make hir wide . but it is perious to vse it often  
that the Juse fall ner spryng in to hir yghes .

**A**lso and ye geue yowre balke fresh butter or the marrow  
of hogges that is in the bone of the butte of porke . it shall ma-  
ke hir to cast water bele at the nares . and it will kepe the na-  
res oppn . but it will make hir halstyn and prodd

### **A medecyne for the Crap & man folow**

**T**ake and chafe with yowre hondys the fundament of yowre

balke With luke Water a longe tyme . and after that take the  
powder of Sapifrage or ellis the powder of Kelshe . and a quan-  
tite of may butter . and temper hit best to gedez till thay ben  
euen medide . than putte . it in a littyll top and stoppe it faste . &  
as of tyn as yow fede yowre balke an houle meke anoynt hire  
meete a littyll therewith . and that shall make hit to loue meet  
the better for loue of the oynement . and it shall saue hir fro  
the Cray and from mony oder sekeneſes : that gender of te in  
an balke .

**C** Also take the hote hert of a ſlypne or of a pigge and  
feede hir . .ij. . days therewith . and ſhe ſhall be houle .

**C** Also take porke and Beete it in hote mylke of a cowe . &  
fede the balke therewith . and that shall make hir mutyſe att  
the beſt .

**C** Also porke With the mary of the boon of the but of porke  
shall make hir mutiſe & fede hir With booth to gedez .

**C** Also roſe hir to freſh butter and it ſhall doo theſſame

**C** Also oon mele or .ij. . at the moſt of the hote leuez of a pig  
shall make hir to mutyſe Beek . be Ware ye yene hir not to grete  
a goorge therof . for it is a perulous meete

**C** Also take y<sup>e</sup> white of an egge . & labur theſſame i a ſpoge  
as beele as ye ſhalte make glayre for rede Inke till it be like  
Wat . put theſſame i a poſſelt . & let the meete y<sup>e</sup> shall be for hir  
foz : by a ſtepe therin all the day be for . & at night fede hir therw<sup>th</sup>



and that the Rich shall be for his dyners in the mornynge let it  
lye all the nyght. but in any wyse that ye haue alway fresh  
gleyce. and if his sedynge be worse it is the better. p<sup>r</sup> is proued

## ¶ The kynndeli termes that belong to haukeis.

**I**n the begynnyng of kynndeli spech of the termes that be  
long to haukeis here ye may fynde theym ¶ The first  
is holde fast at all tyme. and specially When she bateth. It is  
calde batynge. for she bateth With hir selfe most of tyme causeles

¶ The secunde is rebate your hawke: to yowre fyft. & that  
is When yowre hawke bateth. the lest meynynge that ye can ma-  
ke With yowre fyft she Wilt rebate ayeen vpon yowre fyft

¶ The thirde is feede yowre hawke. and not geue hir meete

¶ The fourth is an hawke synnith. or selwith hir beke and  
not Wipith hir beke ¶ The .v. yowre hawke Yowith. and not  
slepith ¶ The .vi. yowre hawke prynceth. and not pikith and  
she prynceth not but When she begynneth at hir legges. and set-  
teth moystour like oyle. at hir tait. and balmeth hir fete &  
it is the fedens of hir Wynges thowth hir beke. and it is  
calde the note. than as she fetchis the oyle. And ye shall vn-  
derstande an hawke Wolde not be letted of his pryncynge. For  
that tyme that she prynceth she is lykynge and lusty. and  
Whanne she hath done she Wilt. wylse hire myghtyly.

**A**nd sum tyme poltre halke coltencanis as she piked hir . and  
yet she pownith not . and thyn ye most say she Reformith hir fede;  
is and not piketh hir fedis . ¶ The . viij . poltre halke colp  
eth and not bekyth ¶ The . iij . she wolsith and not shakith  
hir selfe ¶ The . iij . she strepnith and not Clithith nor Crat;  
chith ¶ The . p . she mantellith and not stretchith Whan she put  
tith hir leges from hir oon after an other : and hir Wynges fo:  
low after hir legges . then she dooth mantill hir and Whan she  
both mantilled hir and byngnith both hir Wynges to geider o:  
uer hir backe ye shall say poltre halke Barbellith hir Wynges.  
and that is oon terme wel thefore ¶ The . p . ye shall say  
poltre halke mutcsfith or mutith and not skypith . ¶ The  
. p . ye shall say cast poltre halke to the perch . and not set pou  
re halke vpon the perch .

**H**ere shal ye understonde furthermore other ma  
ner of termys that belong vnto hawkis for to co  
mende them for diuerse of theyr proprieteis

**F**irst ye shall say This is a fapz halke . an hudge hau  
ke a longe halke . a short thike halke . & for not this is  
a goute halke . also ye shall say this hauke has a large beke Or  
a shortt beke . and call it not bille . an hudge hede or a small hede  
de fapre sesoned ye shall say poltre halke is full goorged and  
not cropped . and poltre halke puttithouer and endueth . and  
yet she dooth both ouersely .

## **C**How poure hawke puttithouer

**A**n halke puttithouer when she tremeith the mete from hir gorge in to hir bolillis . And thus ye shall knowe it when she puttithouer she traueseth with hir bodi . and speciall with the necke : as a Crane dooth or an othe bradd

## **C**When ye shall say enduth & embowellid

**A**n halke enduth neuer as long as hir bolillis bene full at her fedynge . but assone as she is fedde . and resteth she enduth littill and littill . And if her gorge be wide and the bollett any thyng stiffe . ye shall say she is embowellid and hath not fully enduthed and as long as ye may fele any thyng in hir bolillis it is perous to geue her any mete .

## **C**Wether well theys terms folowynge

**S**ay an halke hath a long wyng . a faire long tapt with out baris obt . and stondith vpon the . wy . This halke is entyngned That is to say when the federis of the wynges bene bitwen the body and the thighis . This halke has an hudge legge or a flat leg . or a colnde legge . or a faire ensetid legge

## **C**To knowe the mail of an hawke

**H**alkes haue White mail . Canuasmail or Red mail . And som call Red mail Joon mail . White mail is soone knowe . Canuasmail is betwene white mail and Joon mail . And Joon mail is part Red .

## **A** Plumage . and Caste yowre hawke.

**A** Goshawe nor a tereit in thare fore aage haue nott thau maples named . bot it is calde theiz plumage . and after the cote . it is calde theiz Maill **A** And if yowr halke ce Ward to any folle by countenance for to flee thez to ye shall say cast the halke thez to . and not lett flu thez to .

## **A** Nomme or seefid .

**A** And if yowre halke Nomme a folle . and the folle breke a Way fro hir . she hath discomfet mony federes of the folle . and is brokyn a Way for m kyndeli spech ye shall say yowre halke hath Nomme or seefid a folle and not take it

## **A** Werfore an hawke is calde a Rifelere .

**A** And oft tyme it happith mony an halke for egerneffe When he shulde Nomme a folle he seefith bot the federis . and as ofte as he doos so he Riflith . thezfore such halokys ben called Rifelers if they doo ofte so .

## **H**ow ye shall naame the memberes of yowre hawks in conuenient termes .

**N**ow ye shall vnderstande the naampys off the memberes of halokys : to begynne at hir fete and goo vppwarde as knyghtis ben harnessed and armed . & so he shall ename he

## **A Talons .**

**F**irst the grete Clees behynde . that strength the bace of the hande . ye shall call hom Talons

## **A Pownces .**

**T**he Clees With i the fote ye shall call of right her Pownces

## **A Longe Sengles .**

**B**ott certainly the Clees that are vppon the medyll stretch : as ye shall call the loong Sengles .

## **A Wety Sengles .**

**A**nd the uttermost Clees ye shall call the Wety Sengles

## **A The key or Closer .**

**U**nderstand ye also that the longe Sengles be cald the key of the fote . or the Closer . For what thyng som euer it be y<sup>e</sup> polbre halbe strength : open that Sengle . and all the fote is open . for the strength ther of fortyfieth all the fote .

## **A Seris of waterp or waxy coloure .**

**K**nowe ye : that the skynne a bolbre polbre halbkys legges & his fete . is cald : the Seris of his legges and his fete . Wher ther thay be Waterp beded or of Waxy coloure polowe .

## **T**he Beene feder. Full Sommyd myd . and Reclaymede .

**A**n halbe hath . xij . federis vppon his taylor . and con pryn  
apall feder of thessame is in the myddis . and in maner  
all that oder bene couertid vnder thessame feder . and that is cal  
led the Beene feder of the taylor . And thez gooth blacke bartis  
ouerwarde the taylor . and thos same bartis shall telle yow what  
she is full summed . or full fermyd . For when she is full bartid  
she stondith vppon . xij . and then she is perfite rede to be Recla  
ymede .

**W**e shall vnderstonde that as longe as an halbe stondith  
vnder the nombre of . xij . bartis . And she be in hir fore aage :  
it most be sayde that she is not full summed . for so longe she is  
not tender Hemmyd Whether she be brayncher or Eyes .

**A**nd iff she be a melbed halbe . and stonde within . xij . bar  
tis . ye shall say she is not full fermed . for she is not habill to be  
Reclaymed . be cause she is dralbe to soone olbt of the melbe for  
she is not hard pemyd . no more than a soore halbe .

## **B**rayles or Braylfederis . Degouted

**T**o know forthymor of halbes . an halbe hath long smale  
White federis . hangyng vnder the taylor : from hir bollett dollne  
warde . and the same federis ye shall call the brayles or the brayle  
federis . And communely euery goshalbe and euery tayloris  
braylis bene byspranged with blacke speckes . like Armpis . and  
for all that thay bene accomptid neuer the better . Not and a  
spare halbe be so Emmyed vppon the brayles . or a Musket . oder  
ye shall say she is Degouted to the uttermost brayle . and much  
it betokenis hardnes .

## **¶** Brest federys . Plumage . Barbe federys . Pendaunt federys

**T**he federis abode the formore partes of an halke : becalled the brest federis . & the federis vnder the Wynges are plumage  
The federis vnder the beke be calde the barbe federis . And the federis that bene at the Joynte : at the halkes Ane thay stonde hanging and sharpe at thyndes . thos be calde the pendaunte federis .

## **¶** Flagg or faggis federys .

**T**he federis at the Wynges next the body be calde the flagg or the fagg federis .

## **¶** Beme federes of the Wyng Sercell

**A**nd the long federis of the Wynges of an halke bene calde the beme federis of the Wyng . And the federis that sum call the wyngon feder . of a nodes folde . of an halke : it is calde the Sercell  
**¶** And ye shall vnderstonde iff an halke be in melde y<sup>e</sup> same sercell feder shall be the last feder that she Bitt cast . and y<sup>t</sup> yt that be cast . she is neuer melled . y<sup>t</sup> it has bene seen : that halkes haue cast that same first as I haue herde say . bot that other Reule is gendraft . and When / he hath cast his sercell in melde . then and not erst it is tyme for to fede him With Wasch mete and to begynne to ensayne hire .

## **¶** Ensayme

**E**nsayne of an halke is the grece . and bot if that be take a Way With fedgung of Wasch meete and otherwyse as it shall be  
b )

declared here after. the Witt gedder a panett Rich may be his to  
termost confusion . and the flye therwith. and take blood . and  
coolde ther wypon .

### **C Couertis or couert federis**

Ther bene also federis that closse wypon the scallis . and  
thos same be calde the couertis or the couert federis . and so all the  
federis be calde that bene next ouer the long bene federis . and  
the fagg federis wypon the Wynges

### **C Backe federis .**

The federis wypon the backe halse be called the backe federis

### **C Beke Clape Nares Sere**

The Beke of the halke is the upper parte that is croked

The neder parte of his beke is calde the clape of the halke

The Hoolis in the halkes beke bene callede the Nares .

The yelow be thene y<sup>e</sup> Beke & y<sup>e</sup> yeghen is calde y<sup>e</sup> Sere

### **C Crinettis .**

Ther be oon an halke long smale blake federis : like þis  
is abowte the sere & thos same : be calde Crinettis of y<sup>e</sup> halke

### **C Sore aage .**

We shall vnderstande that the first yere of an halke þis  
ther the be calde Bruncher or Eyesh . that first yere is calde  
his sore aage . and all that yere the is calde a sore halke . for



and she escape that yere . With good fedynge she is likly to endure longe .

## **C** To Reclayne an hawke

**I**ff ye Wilt Reclayn yowre halke ye most departe oon me le . in . iij . melis . vnto tyme that she Wilt come to Reclayne . and Whan she Wilt come to Reclayne entrece her melis euery day better and better . And oz she come to the Reclayne make her that she solbre not . For though she be Wel Reclaymed hit may happyn that she Wilt solbre : so hgh in to the Eyre . that ye shall Neether se hir nor fynde hir .

**A**nd iff yowre halke shall flie to the partich . looke that ye Ensayne her oz she flie . Whether she be Brallicher oz Eyes Oz melled halke .

## **C** Why an hawke is called an Eyes .

**A**l halke is calde an Eyes of hir Eyghen . for an hawke that is brought up vnder a Buffard oz a Puttocke : as mo; ny be : hath Wateri Eyghen . For Whan thay be dyslosed and kepit in ferme tyll thay be full summyd . ye shall Analbe thym by thyr Wateri Eyghen . And also hir looke Wilt not be so quyk as a Brallicheris is . and so be cause the best knablege is by the Eygh . they be calde Eyeses .

**W**e may also knalbe an Eyes. bi the palenesse of the feres  
of her legges of the sere ouer the beke. And also by the tyn;  
ys that be wypon her tapt and her Wengys Wiche tynntys com  
for lacke of fedynge. When thay be Eyes.

### **What a tynnt is.**

**A** Tynnt is a thyng that gooth ouerhaste the ferdys of  
the Wengys. and of the tapt lyke as and; it Were cetyd With  
Wengys and it begynyth first to brede at the body. in the penne  
and that same penne shyt fete asonder. and falle a Wap thur;  
row the same tynnte and; then is the halke disparaged for all  
that yere.

### **Medecynys to Ensayme yowre hawke**

**T**ake the Rote of Rasue and do it in cleue Water. and lay  
the flesch ther in. to temper a grete Whyle. and yewe it to yowre  
halke to ete. and if she ete therof. drede not bot hit shall be;  
nymme his grece. bot Within. iij. days she shall not grettely a;  
bate.

**A**lso take pullast and; garlek and stampe it Wele to ge;  
der. and Wrynge oute the Juice in a dysch. and then Wete the  
flesch thur in. and fede yowre halke therwyth. and; bot it tem;  
pur yowre halke. that is to say ensayme yowre halke. With in  
.iiii. days. I meruett Bot looke eueri day that ye make new  
Juice and When ye fede hir. Wete yowre meete thur in.

**A**lso take the Juice of pearly Moris otherwile cald pearly  
celly Rootis . and the same of 3 sop . and Wash yowre flesh ther  
in and yowre halbe shall be Ensaymed kyndly . and no grete  
abate to the halbe .

**S**om use to lay thare flesh in Water almost a day . and ye  
use the same to the halbe at soper . and that at lyth all nyght .  
to geue to hit in the mornynge . and thus to fede hym in melb or  
thay be drawen a bolbe a moneth or .vi. Weekys . and to ensa  
yme the ym or thay com on fise . as sone as thay cast thyr cet  
cell . then is the tyme to begynne to fede hym soo .

### **H**ow yowre hawke ensaymythe

**U**nderstonde ye for certayn : that as longe as yowre halbes  
fete be blackysch and rough : she is full of grece . and euer as  
she ensaymyth . hir fete Butt they yelow and smothe

**H**ow ye shall gyde yow whan yowre hawke is  
redy to flie . Also ye shall say put up a partriche

**W**han ye haue ensaymed yowre halbe : and Reclaymed  
hir . and that she is redy to flie to the partrich . ye most  
take a partrich in yowre bagge . and goo in to the feld . and let

your spannellis fynde a Coup of partrichys . and When they  
be put vpp . and begynne to scatre . ye most haue markes to  
marke som of thaim . and then couple vpp your houndys . When  
ye haue so coon . let sum felow of youris pruel: take the partrich  
olde of your bagge . and ty it by the legge : With a creance .  
and cast it vpp as high as he can . and as soon as the hawke  
seith his the Bitt flie ther to . and if your hawke sees the parti-  
rich a boone . yeue him a rewarde : therupon . and go after y<sup>e</sup>  
by layfoure to the partrich that he marked and doo as I shall  
tell you here folowynge .

**I**f ye haue a chastised hounde : that Bitt be rebuket : and  
is a Retriuer . couple him and no moo of your houndes .  
and goo to a fengler partrich : of the coup so sparplid . and be as  
nygh as ye can to the (Risynge therof and if your hawke desire  
cast him to it . and if she take it then is your hawke made for  
that yere . and of the same partrich that she sleth . thus ye mooste  
rewarde him as it shalthe here next folowynge .

### **H**ow ye shall rewarde your hawke .

**T**ake a knyfe and cutt the hede and the necke from the body  
of the partrich . and stripe the skynne a way from the necke . and  
yeue that same to the hawke . and couer the body of the fowle With  
a bonett or an hatt . and lay the sayd hede and the necke therup

pon . and if she Wilt forsake the fowle that she plumpeth on . and  
com to the rebarde . then preyli take a Way the partrich . and re  
Warde yowre halke With the Grayne . and the necke . Be Wa  
re that she ete no bonys . for that is euell to endelbe . and it  
Wilt make hir conlusty : for to flye . And thus ye most serue  
hir of as many as she sleth . bot let hir rebarde be the lasse .  
for ellis she may be sone full goorged . and then she may flye  
no more a grete While .

### **C**how yowre hawke shall Reioyse .

**A**nd Whan yowre halke hath sloyne a fowle . and is re  
warded as I haue sayde . let hir not flie in no Whise tyll y<sup>e</sup> she  
haue Reioyed hir . that is to say . tyll she haue selved . or snydded  
her beke . or ellys wolued her . and Whan she hath done any of  
theys . or all . go and retriue moo and she Wilt nymplente .

**W**han yowre hawke hath nomme a fowle how  
ye shall do that ye rebuke not the hawke .

**H**ere Bele oon thyng . and belbare therof . Whan yowre hau  
ke hath nomme a partrich . stonde a goode Way of . and come  
not to nygh her . and dryue a Way yowre boundys . for rebu  
kyng of hir . for many halldys loue noon wylldys . and also

many holbndys Wilt brymme theym theyre gamme from thez  
fote . and that is parlous . and Whiles yowre halke plumith  
rumme softely towarde hiz . alway nere and nere . and if she  
leue plumpng . and loke wypon yow . stonde styll and chake  
hiz . and Whistyll hiz . tyll she plume aye . and thus serue hiz  
tyll ye be right nere hiz . Than soft and layserly : fall oppon  
yowre knees . and pceuely Wile she plumpth sett yowre honde  
and be sure of the gesse . and than ye may gyde all thyng as ye  
Wyll . and if ye do the contrary : she Wyll for feere cary hir  
game or let it go quyk . and that is bot losse to yow and  
yowre halke also .

**A** medecyne for to make an hawke to cast that  
is a comberyd with castyng with in her body

**T**ake the Juice of Salandyne . and Betz a morcell of flesh  
therm . the molntenaunce of a Mole . and geue that morcell  
to the halke . and that shall make hiz for to cast hir olde cast  
tyng . and the halke shall be safe .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that will soure

**W**ash the flesh that yowre halke shall be fedde With : in ye  
Juice of fenell . and that shall take away that pride from hiz  
and make hiz to leue his solyng whether she be lene or fatte .

And mony tymes an halke Wilt sothe than he lackyth ba;  
thng .

### **A** medecyne for an hawke that is lowe .

**T**ake quycke siluer and put it in a bassen of brasse . and  
do ther to saladyne : and ashyes . and medylt it Bele to geder .  
tyll all the quycke siluer be dede . and medylt thereto fat of bon;  
nyes . and anoynte the halke therewith . and hang it aboute his  
necke tyll it fast a way . and that shall slee the lies .

**A**lso powdre of orpiment blolben vppon an halke : With  
a penne shall slee the lies .

**A**lso take a dragon or peece of Rough blanket ynghorn  
and holde it to the fire . vnto tyme it be thorough olde warme  
and Drape the halke therein . and than holde his softly and  
styll . for hurtyng in yowre hondys . and the vermyen Wilt cre  
pe in to the cloth .

**A**lso holde his in the sonne in a fayre day . & ye shall se  
the vermyen crepe olde vppon his federis . then take a knyfe and  
Bete the oon side of the blade therof w<sup>th</sup> yowre mowth . & allway  
as thay appere lay the Bete side of the knyfe to thym . and they  
Wilt cleue ther to . and then ye may slee thaym .

## **C** The opynyon of Ostregiers.

**A**fter the opynyon of many Ostregiers : and ye fede yowre halbe continually With sporne With Japes. With spyes. Or especially wete his mech in Rayeny Weter. thay shall be lollse .

## **C** Ostregieris . Speruiteris . Faulkenris .

**N**ow be cause I speke of Ostregieris : ye shall understonde that thay be calde Ostregieris that kepe Goshaldys . or Terrellis . and tho that kepe Sperhaldys and musketys ben called Speruiteris . and keepers of all other halbes ben called Faulkenris .

## **C** The length of the Gelle . Lewnes . Tyretis . and how they be fastened . a Bewettis

**H**albes haue aboute thyr legges Gelle made of leder most commonly . som of silke . Wich shulde be no longer bot that the knottis of thym shulde appeere in myddys of the lefte honde : betwene the longe fynge and the leche fynge . be cause the lewnes shulde be fastened to thym . With a payre of tyretis . Wich tyretis shuld rest vpon the lewnes . and not vpon the gesses . for hynggng and fastnyng vpon trees When she flyeth . and the saame lewnes . yow shall fastyn than a halbe yowre lttlyt fynge flackely . in compassyng the saame in . iii . or . v .



folde . as a boldfeyng monocappede and the ferettye ferue to kepe  
hiz from Byndyng Whan she hath **C** Also the same letheris  
that be putt in hir bellis : to be fastyned a houte hiz legges ye  
shall calle Gedettis .

## **C**reaunce .

**A**lso ye shall call the long lyne that ye do call yourre halke  
to Reclaym With : yowre Creaunce . What so euer it be .

## **C**A medecyne for an hawke that will cast flesch

**P**utt the flesch that yowre halke shall eate in fayre Water .  
and fede her therewith . iij . wyks . and she shall holde hir flesch at  
the best .

## **C**A medecyne for an hawke that has lost here courage .

**A**n halke that hath loost her courage : a man may knalbe  
if he Witt take good hede . For such is hir maner . Whan she  
is cast to a fowle . she fleeth a wayward as thogh she knelbe  
nott the fowle . Or ellis she Witt fle a luttill way after . and  
a noon she yeueth it upp . and for suche an halke thys is a  
goode medecyn .

**T**ake Oyle of spayne and temper it With cleve Wyne . and With the yolke of an egge and put therein befe . and therof geue to poltre halke . so . morcellis . and then set hir in the sonne . and at euen fede hir With an olde hote coluer . and if ye fede hir thg in tymys that halke Was neuer so lusey nor so Joly before . as she Will be after and come to hir owne corage .

**O**thir make poudre of mecles that stynkith . and putt the poudre on the flesh of a pooke and meditt the bloode of the pooke among the poudre . and make hir to ete the flesh .

**A** medecyne that an hawke shall not lie i mew for unlustynesle .

**T**ake seme Rotis that growith on an Oke . and oke apyllis and make Juce of thym . and bete hir flesh therein . & fede the halke . ij . tymys or . iij . and that shall make hir to leue that

**A** medicine for an hawke that hath the teyne

**A**n halke that hath the teyne a man may sone knalb if he take heed . for this is hir maner She Will pante more for oon batyng then an othez for . iiii . & if she shulde flie a litle while she shuld almost lese hir breeth . Whether she be fatte or lene . and alway she makyth huy there . and for that this is the medecyne .

**T**ake a quantyte of the Redenesse of hofett With the poude  
of Rasne and peper and somwhat of gynger . and make the  
rof m fresh grace iij . pellets and holde the bolke to the fire  
and When she felith the hete make her to swalowe the . iij pel  
lets by strength . and knytte fast her beke that she cast it not  
out and so thys . and she shall be safe .

**A**lso take Rasne and Rubarb . and grynde it to gedre .  
and make Juice therof and Bete the flesh thym . and geue it  
hys to ate . and she shall be hoolt .

**A**lso take alisabndre and the Roote of prima rose and  
the Roote of gro gnauteles and seeth all m the bottre of a kolb  
and geue hys . iij morcellis every day vnto the tyme that she  
be hool . and looke that she be Wyde When ye geue hys the me;  
decyne .

## How a man shall take an hawke fro the Eyter

**W**ho so takys an hawke from the Eyter : hym behoueth  
to doo Wisely . m byngyng hym easeli . and to kepe hym  
Bele from colde . and from hurtynge of thyr tonye . for thay  
be fast tender . and thay most haue grette rest . and thay may  
not haue styngyng & filthy Eyre bot as clene as can & may  
be thoght . and euermore geue him clene meete . and hote . &  
a litle & ofty . & change oftyn they meete bot loke it be hot

and cutt her meete in to smale morcellis . for thay shulde nott  
 tye on bones tyll they myght flie . Then after When she beg-  
 ynneth to penne . and plumpeth . and spalchith and pikith her sel-  
 fe . Putt her in a cloose warme place . that no fulmetis nor fe-  
 cheus . ne other vermyen com nott in to her . and let the place be  
 secure from Wynde and rayne . and then she will proue her selfe  
 and euer more proue her good hote meetys . For it is better to  
 a man to fede his hawke While she is tender With hote meetis .  
 to make her good With somme cost . then to fede her With euell  
 meetis to make her conthreft With tytyll cost . **A**nd looke  
 When she begynneth to seme then proue her bathyng .

**A** medecyne for wormys in an hawke wiche is  
 henesse is called the Sylaudris .

**M**erke Wel this schenesse and belare therof . This is the  
 medecyne therfore . ye shall take an herbe that is called Nettle  
 and putt it in a small gut of a Capon or of an henne . and  
 knyt it With a threde . and let her Resoue it hoot . and she  
 shall be hoot and saafe **T**hus ye shall knowe When  
 yowre hawke hath Wormys in her bowke . Looke When she hath  
 castyng and ye shall fynde oon or .ij . a bowke her castyng pla-  
 ce iff she haue ony .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that castys wor-  
 mys at the foundemēt what wormis that thri be

**T**ake the lymayst of Zen : & medyll it With flesh of porke &

geue it to y<sup>e</sup> hauke .ij. days for to hrete .and she shall be hooll

**A** medecyne for an hawke that hath a lehenesse  
the wich is called the aggreseyne .

**W**hen ye se yowre halke hurte his fete With his Beke .and  
pullyth her tapt .then she hath the aggreseyne . For this seken-  
nese take Merde of a dove .and of a shepe .and of an allob ;  
and stronge roynegre . and do all softely in a bossyn of brasfe . &  
Medyllt hym Bele to gedez : to serue .ij. days after . and geue  
his flesch of a coluer With ony and With powder of peper . and  
set his in a derke place . and so .x. days . and When ye see  
Mell federis in the tapt . Wash his With euens . and she shall  
be hoole and soafe .

**A** medecyne for an hawke that hath the cro-  
ampe in hir wynges and how it cumynth .

**F**or this Croampe take a Whyte looff of brede sumwat colder  
than it comyth out of the ouen . and let holde the halke soft-  
tely for hurtynge . and kut the looff almoost thowth oute . and  
dispay the Wynges esely . and holde it betwene the .ij. partes of  
the looff . and let it be holde so . the space of alfe a quarter  
of an houre . and she shall be hoole .

**T**he Croampe comyth to an halke With takynge of co-  
lode in his yowthe . Therefore it is goode for an halke to ke-  
pe his Warne : yonge and hoold . and this medecyne is good  
at all tymes for his Whythe : she be yonge or holde .

**L**et not an hawke be put in mew to late but in  
this maner as it folowth. if ye loue your hawke

**I**f ye loue Beke your halke. Kepe her Beke. and put hir  
nott late in mew. for Who so for courtesnesse of flugge leses the  
tyme of his halke mewynge. and Withholdis her to long therfro  
he may after putt hir i mew at auenture. for then a parte of hir  
mewynge tyme is past. ¶ Who so putteth his halke in mew  
in the begynnynge of Lentyn. if she be kept as she adoth to be she  
shall be mewed. in the begynnynge of Auguste.

**C**how ye shall dispose and ordayne your mew

**S**ett and dispose your mew. in this maner so. that no Be  
sett nez puleatt nez non other vermye entre ther to. Ne none  
Wynde. nez no grate colde. Ne that it be ouer hote. Let that on  
parte of the mew be turned to wards the sonne. so that in the mo  
ost parte of the day: the sonne may come Inne.

¶ Also ye must se that she be not auerped nez greued With  
mych noyse. nez With song of men. and that no manner folkes  
come to hir. but oonly he that feedeth hir.

¶ It behoueth that your halke haue a fedynge stocke in hir  
mew. and a longe stryng tyed ther to: to fasten hir mete With  
for ellis she Wilt carpe it a tyme the hous. and soyle it With dust  
And peradventure she Wilt hyde it till it stynke. and then feede  
vpon it. and that myght be hir deth. and therfor When it is  
bondyn to the sayd fedynge stocke. she shall nether at the fedynge  
nez at the tryng ne at the lightynge ne at the Rysynge hurte  
hir selfe. And When she hath fedde. take a Way the remenaunt  
if any leue. and in any wyse that she haue cleane mete. and att  
euery meett fresh. for of stale metis and euell metis she shal  
engender mony sekenesses. ¶ And loke ye go neuer to your

melb hot When ye shall perceiue polbre halbke meete . or elles to br:  
yng Water to bathe her . and suffer no Rayn to Wette hir at no  
tyme . and ye may . and as for hir bathyng that shall no thig  
hynder hir melbyng .

**T**he maner how a man shall put an hawke  
in to mewe . and that is to be wele nooted .

**O**ff oon thyng ye most be ware Betwixt yff she haue any seke;  
nes that ye make her hole or ye put hir in melbe . for as I con  
terstonde a seke halbke shall neuer melb Well . for though she me  
be she shall not endure but While she is grete and fatte . for at the  
abatyng of hir astate she may no lenger endure .

**S**ome tyme With othe any medicyne many men deuyseyn hou  
thay myght melb ther halbkys for sum put halbkys in melb at  
high estate . and sum When thay be right lobb . and sum When  
thay be full . and sum When they be Empty and lene . and sume  
When thay be mysfembult lene . Bot therof it is no force . iff she  
be hole Neuertheles . I shall say myn aduyce as I haue sene e  
lerned .

**W**ho so puttith a Goshaloke or a Cercell or a spere halbke in  
to melb so high that she may be no higher . she Will holde hir lo;  
nge in the popnt : or that she lese or lent any federis . And who so  
puttith hir in melb lene . it Will be long or she be remounted and  
who so puttith hir in melb to hungry and to lene : if she haue me  
ete at hir Will she Will ete to moch . be cause of hunger . and pa;  
uerture she may be dede ther by . as hath ofte be sene

**B**ot who so Will that an halbke endure and melb kyndli . myn  
councell it is that she be not to high noder to lobb . noder in gre

be destresse of hungre . bot like as she wolde flee best then take here  
the first day of to moch eetyng . vnto tyme that she be slawthid  
and after that a man may take her sich mete as I shall tell mo  
re playnli here after

## **I**n what maner and how a man shall fede his hawke in newe.

**T**ake With That meetis she hath bene most used to be fedde and  
fede hir therewith . viij . days continualli . and the . viij . days pe;  
ue hir birdis I nolb . both morow and euen . and let hir plomme  
repon hem Bele . and take castyng of the plomage . and that sh;  
att talabnt hir Bele . and cause her to haue goode appetite and  
it shall clense Bele hir bolillis and When she is Beett clensed .  
ye may geue hir What mete that ye will so it be cleue and fresh

**T**he best mete to make an halke to melbe moost sone  
With othe any medecyne is the fleshe of a hynde and of a yong  
Swanne and of a chikyn and especiaall Ratons flesch so ther  
be not assaughte Moone like to hit and of a yong goos for such  
mete is hote of it selfe .

**A**nd take gobettis of grete fresh Elis . and specialli the col  
py next the Nauelt . and Beete it in hote bloode of moton it is  
goode to make her to melbe . bot specialli it shall make her Bright  
after hir soore aage

**T**hes sayd fleshes bene goode to melbe an halke : and to  
kepe hir in state bot loke she haue goode plante euery day . so that  
she Rather leue parte then lacke any . and euery . iij . day let hir  
both if she lyst



**A**nd When she Washy ngyh ferme geue his hemys and  
fatt porke and of an hounde is passing good .

**A**n halke is neuer fult ferme nor redy forto drinke olde  
of melb vnto tyme his farcell be fult growen . yet haue I sene su  
folke take hem olde of melbe When the farcell were bot halfe i  
sponge . and that is perous . for they are not then harde pen;  
ned .

**S**om folke wsen When an halke has cast his farcell to  
begyne and Wash his meete . and fede his so in melb With Wash  
meete a moneth or .vi. Weekes or euer chap drinke thaim .

**B**ot of all fleshes after she is melbed . a resenable goorze  
of an hoothe haare is best . and also of a crolbe hoothe . bot it  
mothe be Wash in Water : and then it is the better . For that  
Wilt not benymmen hem hastely theyr goore . ner put hem in no  
grete febulnes . for it durith sumwat With his .

**T**o make an hawke to mew tymeli with out  
any hurtyng of his .

**N**ow I shall tell you veray true medecynes for to melbe an  
halke hastly that ye shall beleue for trothe and ye Wilt as;  
for them .

**T**her be in Woodys or in hedgis Wormys calde eders that  
ben Redde of nature . and he is calde Rapa . and also ther be sna  
kys of thesame kynde . and they be verri bitter . Take .ij. or .iij  
of them and smyte of theyr hodes and thenys of theyr taylis .  
Then take a new erthen pot : that has neuer used . and cut hem

1 to small gobettys . and put thos same therein . and let hem se;  
the stronglich . a grete While . at good laysez . and let the pot be  
couered . that no ayre com olte of it ner no breth and let it se  
the so long that the saime colpons seth to grece . then cast it out  
and doo a Way the bonis . and geder the grece . and put it in a cle  
ne vessell . and as oft as ye fede polbre halke : anoyt her meete  
therin . and let hir ete as moch as she Wilt . and that meete shal  
melbe her at polbre alwe Wilt .

### **C** Another medecyne .

**T**ake Whete : and put it in the brothe that thoderis Were so ;  
then in . and When ye se the Whete begynnyth to cleue : take it out  
and fede hennys or ehlynnnes therwith . and fede polbre halke  
With thos same polayn .

**W**ho so will that an hawke mede not nor fall  
noon of his federis . therefore here is a medecyne

**T**ake polbre of Canett . and the Juice of franke cost and  
the Juice of parape . and take morcellis of flesh . iij . or . iiii . if  
ye lust and Boete them therein . and make the halke to swalow  
ham and serue hir so many tymys .

**A**lso take the skynne of a snake or of an Eder . and cut  
it in to small peces . and temper it With hote blode : and cause  
polbre halke of tyn tyme to fede therof and she shal not melbe .

## **¶ For the gowte in the throte .**

**W**hen ye se yowre halke blak of tyn tymes : and that it comys of no batynge . ye may be sure she hath the gowte in the throte . And for that Take the bloode of a peke . and Encense myrr ; bolanana . and clabys of gelofre . and canell and gynger . and take of all thes eynlich and medylt hem With peockles bloode . and seth it tyll it be thycke . and therof make morcellis . and geue the halke therof eueri day . at mydmoone and att Moone .

## **¶ For the gowte in the hede and i the Raynes .**

**W**hen ye se yowre halke may not endur her meete nor remouthe her astate . she hath the gowte in the hede and in the Raynes .

**¶ Take** Mompan oterwise called mompan . among Potita ; ries ye may haue it . and the skynne of an hare and geue it to yowre halke to ete . iij . tymes With the flesh of a cat . and iff she may holde that meete she shall be saafe .

## **¶ A medecyne for a sekenes called the fallera**

**W**hen ye se that yowre halke clees Day White : then she has the fallera . For this sekenes take a blacke snake . and cutte a Day the hede . and the tayll . and take the myddylt . and fry it in an erythyn pott . and take the grece and saue it . and anoynt the flesh of a peoke therewith and geue it to the halke for to

ete .vij. days : and ye haue no peche yeue hir flesh of a cald  
and after the .vij. days . yeue hir a chekyn . and Wash it a luttel  
and yeue it hir to ete . and take the tenderest of the breast Withe  
the ffreshelt bone and let hir ete it . and if she amende any thi  
ng she shall be hooll .

**A** medecyne for the crampe in the thigh in the  
legge and in the fote of an hawke .

When ye se your hawke lay hir oon fote vppon her oðer fote . she  
is take With the crampe . Then drawe her blode vppon the fote  
ye lies vppon that oðer fote . and vppon the legge also . and  
she shall be hoole .

**C** For the Cogh or the poole .

Take powder of Gays : and put it vppon the flesh of a Col  
uer : and yeue it ofte to your halke and With oðer wolte she  
shall be hoole .

**A** medecyne for the podagre .

When your halkes fete be swollyn she hath the podagre then  
Take fresh may butter and as moch of Oyl of olyf and of  
alyn . and chaufe it Bele to gedre at the fiere and make the  
of anoyntement . and anoynt the fete . iiii . days . and set hir in  
the sonne . and yeue hir flesh of a cat . and if that auayle nott  
Seth the cutting of a wyne . and Wrappe it a bolle the swel  
lyng . and let hir sit vppon a colde stone and anoynt hir With  
butter or freshe grece . and she shall be hooll .

**A** medecyne for a sekenes within the body of  
an hauke and it shewith not outwarde how she  
shall be holpen and in what maner .

**A** man may know by the chere. and ungladnes of an hawke:  
ke this infirmitie but yet it is straunge to knowe: thynges  
that a man may not see: in what sekenes and what maner they  
be cured and specialli When a man shote not wherof it com;  
myth **T**ake poltre halke bele vpon an henne and then ma-  
ke her to fast .ij. days after: to avoid beele hir bolbellis . The  
thyrde day take honny so den and fyll hir body full . and bynde hir  
beak that she cast it not out of hir body and then set hir out  
in the sonne . and when it dealith towarde euen fede hir with  
an hote fowle . for as I herde my mayster say and she be not  
hoost herof . loke neuer oðer medecyne .

**For the passion that Goshawks haue fasting**

**T**ake the Roote of small Rysches . and make Juce of  
hem and beete poltre flesch thern and make her to ete it .

**For hawks that ben wounded .**

**T**ake a Ray the fedaris about the Wonde and take the White  
of an Egge and Oyle of Olyue . and meditt it to gedes . and  
anopur the Wonde and kepe it with White Wyne . vnto tyme ye se  
the flesch . and then put in the Wonde Escampe salt vnto tyme the

dece flesh be wastyd. after take excrece : and cleane as myche of  
that oon as of that oðer . medist it in fere . and When ye Wilt a;  
noynt the soore here yodre oyntement and anoynt it With a pen :  
tyll the tyme the skynne growe ayeme . and if ye se dea flesh ther  
on : and Wolt haue it aWay Take penecreke & then anoynt itt  
With this Oyntement afforsayde and she shall be hoolt

### **A** medecine for an hauke that has the artetick

When ye se yodre halke fat a bolle the hert trust it for trou  
th she hath the artetick . Therefore do let hir blode in the Orignal  
Rayne . and after that geue hir a swogge for to ete . & she shall  
be hoolt

### **A** medecine for an hauke combred i the bowillia

When yodre halke is Encombred in the bowillie ye shall k;  
naw it by hir Eyghes . for hir Eighen Wilt be darke and she Wilt  
looke wngladli and hir metessing Wilt defolde hir foundement .  
Then take the halkes meete and anoynt it With yodre of can;  
nell and geue it hir to ete . and she shall be hoolt .

### **A** medecyne for an hauke that has the goutte

Here yodre halke With an Irbyn onys or thyes . & it shall  
helpe hir :

**A** medecyne for an hauke that hath mites .

**T**ake the Juce of Wormelbode and put it ther that be and ther shall dye .

**T**hat an hauke vse hir craft all the selson to flye or lese .

**W**hen ye go to the felde in the latter ende of badkyng and desi-  
re that yowre badke shall vse hir craft . Do to hir in this ma-  
ner let hir sle a fowle . and let hir plym vpon it as moch as  
she wilt . and When she hath plymmed ynough go to hir softly  
for frayng . and rebarde hir on the fowle . and after that ye  
may cast hir on a perch . & aswell she may vse hir craft so . as  
that she slew all the yere .

**A** medecyne for an hauke that has the stoon

**A**nopnt hir fundament With Oyle . and put the powder of  
alym With an hole straw .

**A**lso take an herbe callid cristis lardder . & anopnt his mow-  
the With it and she shall be healt .

**A**lso take smale floure rotis and polipodi and the cornes  
of sporge and grinde it weell and seeth it in butter . and dralbe  
it thorough a clooth . and make thref . iij . pellettis of the grette ;  
nes of a Mot . and put it in his mowth in the morowtide . and lo-  
ke that she be hoide . and then let her fast till euenfong . and fede  
her littill and littill . and she shall be healt .

## **A** medecyne for vermyyn .

**T**ake the Juice of the Roote of ffenell . and to it Whete the vermyyn be . and thay shall dye .

## **A** medecine for the Reume that haukis haue

**W**hen ye se yodre hauke cloose her Eyghen . and shaketh hir be ;  
te . then bath she the Reume in the hede . Therfore geue hir lorde  
of a gote the first day and the secunde geue hir epatike With the fle  
th of a chycon and she shall be hoolt .

## **A** medecyne for haukis that bene dry and de syre to drynke , to kepe hem moyst in kynde .

**T**ake the Juice of hazzhonde and Beete thyn halibys me  
te therin . and fede her therwith onys or thyes . and she shall  
be hoolt .

## **H**ow sekenes that hankis haue i their Entrellis .

**A** halibke that is seke Withm thetrayles : is of an odes  
aray then m odes sekeneses . for if she holde not hir me ;  
te tof cast it . that is tokyn of the foule glet . for surfete of fedetis  
that be geuen to thalibkis in theyr yodth and afterwarde When  
thay come vnto trouaylt . and ben anoyde of the Reuer then  
thay Wayen sloth to flye and desyre forto rest . and When thauke  
is wypon hir perch then she Wilt slepe forto putouez . at thentray



and if she holde flesh any While in hir goorge : it Will loke as  
it Wor fooden and When she is Waked she assayeth to put ouer  
ot thentzng. and it is agluttide and coldeo : With the glett y<sup>t</sup>  
she hath engenderid. and if she shulde asape she most put ouer.  
or ellis she most oye. or cast it and if she cast it she may be hole  
w<sup>th</sup> the medecyne .

### **A medecyne for the Entreyllis .**

**T**ake yolkes of Egges rawe . and When they be Bele befon  
to gedes . put thereto sparyshe salte . and asmpch hony thereto . &  
Beete therin thy fleche . and fede thyh halke . iij . days therewith  
and if she make daunger to eete it . let holde thyh halke . and  
make hir to swalowe . iij . oz . iiii . morcellis in a day . and secusli  
she shall be woot **A**nt **I** shall say to yow a noder thyng . ta  
ke hony at the chouryng of the moon . and a kens nettyll and  
therof make small powdre and When it is Well gwylnde . take y<sup>e</sup>  
brest boon of an henne . and a noder of a coluer . and bakke it  
With a knyfe . and to assay the styngne . and do theron the powdre  
and att wote With the powdre fede hir . and do so thries . and  
she shall be woot .

### **A For lehenes of Swelling .**

**I**f an Wicked felon be swollyn in sich a maner y<sup>t</sup> a man  
may wett it . that the halke shall nodye thus a man may hel  
pe hir strongly . and lenth the hir lyfe . bot the halke Will be de  
p<sup>r</sup> egre and gletous of the lekenes . and therfor ye moost

Take the Rote of comfory and sugre iliche mych . and sethe  
it in freth grece With the thridde parte of hony . and then draue  
it thorough a sayre clooth . and oft geue it to the halke and she  
shall amende .

## For blaynis i haukes monthes cald frounches

Off the frounches it is drede for halbes . for it is anoyus  
sekenes . and drauith hir to deth . and With hol deth hir streng;  
the . for men sayn that it comyth of colde . For colde deth hal  
bes mych harme . and makyth fleshe fast olde of the brayne &  
the Eyghen With swelt and empyre in her hede . and hot she ha;  
ue hasteli helpe it With stoppe her nase thrillis . And therfor  
Take Fenell Marpast and Reris ilich moch . and sethe it &  
draue it thorough a cloth . and owerhiles . Wash her hede therw<sup>t</sup>  
and put som in the Roose of her mouth . and she shall be saafe

## A medicine for an hauke that castis hir flesh

Wete hir fleshe in sarsoit or ellis seeth Rasus in Water and  
put her fleshe therein : When it boylith .

## A medecyne for the Reume clepid Agrum

When thou seeth thy hauke vpon his mouth and his che  
kis blobbed . then she hath thys sekenes calde Agrum . Therfor  
take a nedell of siluer and hete it i the fire . and brymme the Ma;  
rellis thorough olde . then anoynt it With oyle of Olyff .

**C** For to make an hawke grete and fatte .

**T**ake a quantyte of porke and ony and butter Țliche my;  
che and porged grece and do a Day the skynne . and sethe him  
to geder . and anoynt thy flesh therin . and feede polbre halke  
therwith . and she shall encrece myghtely . Ellis take the Wyn;  
ges of an Eued . and feede hiz and kepe hiz from trauestt and  
do so ofte though the eued be neuer so fatte . and if polbre hal;  
ke be not passing fat Within a fortenet Mondre Ț thynke .

**C** For booches that growe in an hawks Flowe

**R**utt theys botches With an knyfe . and let othe the mater  
of theym . and after clense theym clene With a spluer sponc or  
ellis fille the wolt With a polbre of aenemelit Țbrent . and cop  
pon that polbre do a littill larde : that is resside and so it With a  
Day .

**H**ere is a goode medecyne for an hawke that  
Wyll not coom to Reclayne .

**T**ake fresh butter and put thereto sugre and put it in a cle  
ne cloth and Reclayne her to that and kepe it in a box in pou  
re . bagge .

**A** medecyne for hawks that bene Refreyned .

**W**hen ye se polbre halke Nespung and Castyng Wat thorough  
her Nostrellis or hiz nares then dooteles she is Refrained .

For that sekenes : take ye greynes of shaffelegre and of pe-  
per and grynde it Beett . and temper it With strong wynegre  
and put in his Nares and in the Rooff of his mowth and geue  
his flesch to ete . and she shall be saaff .

**A medecyne for hawks that haue payne in  
theyr croupes .**

**T**he shall take fayre Mosfum and poudre of gelestre : and  
meddell it to gedre . and geue it to yollre halbke to ete . and  
if she holde it past the secunde day after . she shall be hoole .

**A medecyne for the stoone in the fundement**

**T**hen yollre halbke may not metese then she hath that  
sekenes calde the stoone . And for this sekenes : ye shall take the  
hart of a swyne and the grece of a swyne . and cutt it With the  
flesch of the hart and she shall be holpe .

**A medecyne for the dry Frounce .**

**F**or this sekenes take the Roote of Gallipody that groweth  
vpon Olyes . and seth it a grete While then take it fro the fire  
and let it stonde and Rap lew warme . then Wash yollre flesch  
therm . and feede yollre halbke . iij . tymes . and she shall be hoole

**A medecyne for woundes called anguelli**

**T**ake pressure made of a lombe that Was borne in contyme &  
maake therof . iij . morcellis and put it in a gut of a coluer

and fede hir therwith and take the halke be side Byn ye yeue  
hir thys medecyne .

**A**lso take Juce of dragonys and put full the gut of a pe;  
gion and then cut it and departe it as the halke may ouersbo  
losh it . and put it in his body . and knytt his beke for castynge

**A**lso yeue hir the ballocke of a Buc as hote as thap  
ben cut olde . and make powdre of the pyntyll and cast it vppō  
the flesh of a Cat . and fede hir therwith & she shall be hoolt .

**A**n hawke Tyryth . Fedith . Goorgith .  
Behith . Rousith . Endurith . Mutith .  
Perchith . Joplith . Puttithouer . Propnith .  
Plomnith . She warbullith . and mantellith .

**S**he tytyth vppon Rumpys . She fedith on all maner of  
flesh . She goorgith When she fillith hir goorge With meete .  
She behith When she selbith : that is to say she Byppith hir beke .  
She Rousith When she shakith all hir federis and hir body to  
gedre . She Endurith When hir meete in hir bowellys fallt to di  
gestion . She mutith When she auoydith hir orde . She perchith  
When she stondyth on any maner tolbe or perch . She Joplith  
When she slepith . She puttithouer When she Euoidith hir meete  
olde of hir goorge m to hir bowillis . She propnith When she fet  
chith oyle With hir beke ou hir tayle and anoyntith hir fetz &  
hir federis . She plomnith When she pullith federis of any folle

or of any other thyng and castys hem from her. She Warbelyth  
 When she drawyth both her Wyngys ouer the myddys of her boeke .  
 and ther they mete both and softely shakyth them . and let hem  
 fall agen . And she mantyllith When she stretchith her oon Wyng  
 a long after her lege . and afterwarde that other Wyng . and  
 moost comynly she doth that afore or she Warbelyth hir .

## **T**he namys of a Sparre hauke as Ostrigers and Sparuiters haue determyned

**T**her is a question aygd Whether a man shal call a sparre  
 halbke Or a spere halbke Or an aspere halbke . & Os-  
 trigers . and also Sparuiters : sayen she may be callid all . iij .  
 Namys . for thys resoun . She may be callid a Sparre halbke  
 for of all the halbkys that ther be she is moost spere . that is to  
 say moost tendre to wepe . for the lest myforyetynge and mysenten-  
 dyng flesch .

**A**lso she may be calde an aspere halbke of sharpnesse  
 of hir courage . and of hir lohyng quicky . and also of hir fleyng  
 For she is moost asper and sharpe in all thyng that belong  
 vnto hir of any other halbkys

**S**he may be also callid a sparre halbke for . iij . Resones . oon  
 is she sparich goshalbkys and fercellys both . siche as ben in  
 thir soore age . vnto tyme thay may be Reclaymyd . and ma-  
 de redy to fflye . as Goshalbkys and fercellys that be not fil-  
 ly melbed : vnto tyme they may be clene ensaymyd and redy to  
 fflye . for all the Whyle thay bene vnabull . the sparre halbke occu-  
 pythe thysfeson . and flesch the partrich Weelt . that is to say from  
 saynt Margarytes day vnto it be lammes . and so forth in the  
 yere .

**A**nd she Wyll flee Weelt yong fesyadontis : yong heth cockys

In the begynnynge of the yere . And after Michelmass Whan par;  
 triches passe her daunger I haue seen them made sum to sle the pie  
 sum to sle the Tele wypon the Reuer : at the Jutte . sume to sle  
 the Wodecock and sum for the blacke brude and the thrauste .

**T**he Wodecock is comwous to sle : bot if thez be crafte . thez  
 fore Whan ye come to a Wode or a quech of bushus . cast yowre  
 sparehalke m to a tre and bete the bushes then and if any Wo  
 decock arise she Wilt be sure therof . **W**e most first make hir  
 to a folde cast op oddt of the bushes . and yowre halke most  
 sit on loofte as ye make hir to a partriche . Also as I sayde ye  
 may call hir a spare halke : for an ower cause . for and thez Woz  
 a shype fraght full of halakis . and no thyng ellis . and thez Be;  
 re a spare halke among thaym thez shuld no custome be payd be  
 cause of hir . And so for the most comune name thay be calde spa  
 re halkes for the resones aforesayd .

**A**n hawke flieth to the uen to the Beke . or  
 to the Toll . No Crepe Querre Yer Jutty at

**A**ll halke fleeth to the Ryuer dyuersis Ways . and sle;  
 the the folde dyuersli . That is to say she flieth to the Bell  
 or to the beke . or to the toll . & all is bot oon . as ye shall knowe  
 here after She fleeth also to the quarre : to the crepe . and no mo  
 Ways bot thos . in . And she Nymmyth the folde at the fer Jut  
 ty or at the Jutty ferre .

**N**ow shall ye know what theis termes betokyn  
 a moo folowynge . as Huf . Jutty ferry . Mounte  
 Raundon . Crepe . Ennewed .

**A** Goshawke or a trewell that shall flee to the bell . to the toll or to the lake . in this maner she is taught ye most fynde a folde in the Ryuer or in a pitte priueli . and then sette your hawke a grette space of . vppon a mooll hill or on the grownde . and crye softlye toward the folde : from your hawke streight way and when ye come almost ther as the folde lyeth . looke backwarde toward the hawke . and with your hande or with your tabur styrre : becke your hawke to come to you . and when she is on byng . and comyth low bi the grownde . and is almost at you . then styrre your tabur . and crye huff . huff . huff and make the folde to spring . and with that noise the folde wil rise and the hawke wylt nym it .

**A**nd now take heed . If your hawke nym the folde at the fere side of the Ryuer or of the pitte from you Then she sleeth the folde at the fere Jutty and if she flee it vppon that side that ye ben on . as it may haue dyuerse times . Then ye shall say she hath sleen the folde at the Jutty fere .

**A** If your hawke nym the folde a lyste : ye shall say she toke it at the mounte or at the souce .

**A**nd if the folde spring not but flee a long after the Ryuer and the hawke nym it then . ye shall say she slew it at the Rauen wy .

## **C**repe .

**A**nd your hawke sleeth at or to the Crepe when ye haue your hawke on your fist and crye softlye to the Ryuer or to the pit . and stelith softlye to the byrnie therof . and then crye huff . and bi that meane Nym a folde . Then it is slayn at the Crepe or at the fere Jutty . or at the Jutty fere . as a boone is sayd .



**A**nd if it happen as it dooth oftentimes the folke for feare of  
 poltre halke Wilt spring and fall agen in to the Rpuer . or the  
 halke sees his . and so lie styll and dare not arise . ye shall say  
 then poltre halke hath smelved the folke in to the Rpuer . and  
 so shall ye say and saye be moo folkes in the Rpuer then there  
 poltre halke nymmyth if thay cannot arise for feare of yob;  
 or halke

## **A thete .**

**U**nderstonde ye that a Goshalke shulde not flie to any fo;  
 ble of the Rpuer Wilt tellus in no wise . and therefore a Gosh;  
 alke is calde a thete .

## **Queere .**

**A**nd poltre halke fleeth to the queere . When they be in a sto  
 butt tyme Sordes of mallardes in the felds and When they espyth  
 theym and commyth ouerste byr selfe . and flie pteupli wnder hed  
 ges or lads by the grounde . and nym oon of hem . or thay rise  
 then ye shall say that the folke Was slayn at the queere .

## **Merke this terme draw**

**S**om folke myfuse this terme draw . and say that thayr hau  
 ke Wilt draw to the Rpuer . And that terme draw is propusli  
 assigned to that halke that Wilt flie a Roke or a Crow or a  
 Reupn : vpon a longe stryng . and then it most be sayd that  
 such an halke Wilt draw Wilt to a Roke .

**N**owe ye shall vnderstande if a man will make  
an hawke to the querre in this maner he most do

**T**ake a tame Malarde and set hym in a fayr playn . and  
let hym goo where he wilt . then take yolbre halke vpon yolbre  
fist . and goo to that playn . and holde vpon yolbre hande a praty  
Rag of from the Malarde . and looke if the halke can espie it .  
by hir albyn corage and if she haue folude the folde and desi  
re to flee ther to . let hir flee it . and plymme Belt vpon hir .  
and sesue her so . ij . oz . iij . tymes and then she is made to the  
quarre .

**I** haue knalbyn gentylmen that Wynsoeuer and Wyrsoeuer  
thay se any tame Dookes . and if theyr halbys holde desire  
to thaym . then thay holde let flee to theym in coragynng theyr  
halbys to be Beett fleyng to the quarre any oder tyme .

**A** praty craft to take an hawke that is brokyn  
owt of mew . and all maner of fowlys that lyt in  
trees if a man wyl .

**L**ooke where an halke perchith for all nyght : in any ma  
nez place . and softe and layserly clymbe to her With a scon  
ce oz a lanterne that hath bot oon light . in yolbre hande and  
let the light be towarde the halke so that she se not yolbre face  
and ye may take her by the leggs oz oder wise as ye lyst .  
and in lyke wise all othez maner fowle .

## Of hawkys Bellys .

**T**he bellis that yowre halke shal Wyse looke in any Wyse that thay be not to buy ouer hir power to Weyr . al so that noon be buyer then an other bot like of Weyght .  
Looke also that thay be sonowre and Wett solndyng and shil and not both of oon solwe : bot that oon be a semptoyne vnder a uodez . and that thay be hole and not brokyn and speciali in the solndyng place . For and thay be brokyn thay Wyll solwe ne fult dulli .

**O**ff spare halke bellis ther is chooce and lyttill of charge of thaim : for ther beeth plenty .

**B**ot for Goshalkes somtyme Bellis of Melen Were calde the best . and thay be fult goode for thay comunely be solweden With siluer and solde ther after . Bot ther be now used of Duchelande bellis : of a solwe calde durdright . and thay be passing goode . for thay be Wele sortid Wett solweden . sonowre of Ryngyng in shilnes and passing Wett lastyng .

**T**here endyth the proceis of halkeyng . And now folow the naames of all maner of halkeys & to Whom they belong .

## **C** Theſe haukes belong to an Emproure

**T**heſe be the names of all maner of halbes . Firſt an Eagle . a Gyltere . a Melobne . The ſimpleſt of theſe . iij . Bat ſlee an Hynde calfe . a Falbē . a Roo a Rydde . an Elke . a Crane . a Kuſtard a Storke . a Swan . a Fop in the playn grounde . And theſe be not enlured . ne reclaimed . by cauſe that they be ſo ponderoſe to the perch poſtatiſſ . And theſe . iij . by theſe nature belong to an Emproure .

## **C** Theſe haukes belong to a kynge .

**T**heſe is a Gerfalken . a Terrell of a gerfalken . And theſe belong to a kynge .

## **C** For a pryncce .

**T**heſe is a Falcken gentill . and a Terrell gentill . and theſe be for a pryncce .

## **F**or a duke .

**C** Theſe is a Falcken of the rock . And that is for a duke

## **F**or an Erle .

**C** Theſe is a Falcken peregryne And that is for an Erle

## **C** For a Baron .

**A**lſo theſe is a Baſtard and that hauke is for a Baron

## **Hawkes for a knyght**

**T**he is a Sacre and a Sacret . And theis be for a Knyght .

## **Hawke for a Squyer .**

**T**he is a Lanare and a Lantell . And theys belong to a Squyer .

## **For a lady**

**T**he is a Mexlon . And that hawke is for a lady

## **An hawke for a yong man**

**T**he is an Hoby . And that hawke is for a yong man  
And theys be hawkes of the coloure : and ben both Jured to be  
cure and reclaimed .

## **And yet ther be moo kyndis of hawkes**

**T**he is a Goshawke . and that hawke is for a yeman

**T**he is a Tereell . And that is for a polbere man .

**T**he is a Sparre hawke . and he is an hawke for a prest

**T**he is a Musfayte . And he is for an holiwater clerke  
And theis be of an oðer maner kynde . for thay flie to Ouer  
re and to fer Jutte and to Jutte fferre .

**E**xplicit .



**L**ike wise as i the booke of halbyng aforesayd are writen  
 and noted the termys of plesure belongyng to gentill men  
 haupyng delite thern . In thessame maner thys booke solowynge  
 shewith : to sych gentill personys the maner of huntynge for  
 all maner of bestys . Whether thay be Beestys of Venerie . or  
 of chace . or Rascall . And also it shewith all the termys co  
 uenient as bett to the holdndys as to the bestys aforesayd .  
 And in certayn ther be many dyuerse of thaim . as it is de  
 clared in the booke solowynge .

### Bestys of venerie .

**W**hersoevere ye fare by fyrth or by felt  
 My dere chylde take hede howe I askeam dooth you tell  
 How many maner bestys of venerie there were  
 I praym to godde dame and she shall you lece  
 How many maner bestys of venerie there are  
 The first of thaim is the . hert . the secunde is the hare  
 The thre is oon of the . the Belff and not oon moo

### Bestys of the Chace .

**A**nd where that ye cum in playne or in place  
 I shall you tell which be bestys of enchace  
 Oon of thaim is the . Bucke . a nother is the Doo  
 The Fox and the Marton . and the Wilde Roo  
 And ye shall my dere chylde other bestys all .  
 Where so ye hem fynde Rascall ye shall hem call  
 In fyrth or in felt : or in forest I you tell .

## Note here the aage of an hert .

**A**nd for to speke of the hert iff ye Will it leue  
Ye shall hym a . Calfe . call at the fyrst yere  
The secunde yere a . Goket . so shall ye hym call  
The thirde yere a . Spayd . lerneth thus all  
The folowith yere a . Stagge . call hym by any Way  
The fith yere a . grette Stagge . your dame bidde you say  
The vi . yere call ye hym an . hert .  
Doth so my childe Wylis ye ben in quart

## To know the hede of an hert . & that is dyuerse

**A**nd of the hornys that he then berith a bolde .  
The fyrst hede shall be Yugett Wyth olde  
Thez in fyndyn Wee fuche dyuersite .  
Natheles the . vi . yere euermore at the leest  
Thow shall Well Yuge the perche of thesame beest  
When he hath Wentelece Wyth olde any lett  
Kpall and? Surriall also there Ysett  
And that in the toppe so When ye may hym keen  
Then shall ye call hym forchyd an hert of tenne  
And When he hath in the toppe . iij . of the selue  
Then ye shall call hym trochid an hert of . xij .  
And afterwarde in the toppe When thez . iij . bene  
Then shall ye call hym sommyd an hert of . xvi .  
And from . iij . forwarde Watt so befall  
He he neuer of so many ye shall hym summed call  
Ryght of the nombre eyn that he is  
Callith hym from . iij . forth summed Wyth  
Also haue ye sele an hert heded Weele .



**An Herde . A Beve . A Sounder . A Route.**

**C** My chyldre callith herdys of hert and of hynde  
And of Bucke and of doo Where ye hem synde  
And a Beue of Roos What place thay be in  
And a Sounder ye shall of the Wyldre fynde  
And a Route of Wolves Where thay passin inne  
So shall ye hem call as many as thay bene

**A Littill herde . A myddyll heerd A grete heerd**

**C** . pp . is a littyll herde though it be of hyndis  
And . pl . is a myddyl herde to call hym be kyndis  
And . lxxx . is a grete herde call . ye hem so  
Be it hert be it hynde bukke or ellis doo

**How ye shall say a gret hert & not a fair & oder**

**C** A grete hert When ye hym se so shall ye hym call  
Bot neuermore a fayre hert for no thyng that may be fall  
A grete hynde a grete bukke and a fayre doo  
My sonnes Where ye Walke call ye hem so  
So ye shulde naame sich dere: and do as I yow lece

**C What is a beup of Roos grete or small**

**C** And sep is a beue of Roos on a walbe  
And . p . is a myddyll beup fust Bele I it halbe  
A grete beup is . pn . When thay to gedre be  
And so call hem sonnes Where that ye hym se  
The moore nombus than this : the gretter the beup is

## What is a Sounder of wyne grete or small

**T**welve make a Sounder of the Bylde wyne  
For a medyt Sounder What place thax be inne  
A grete sounder of wyne . pp . ye shall cast  
For gett not this lession for thyng that may fast  
Thynke What I say : my sonne nyght and day

## Of the Roo huntynge . brekynge . and dressynge

When ye hunt at the Roo then shall ye say choore  
The crossies and tresones yowre holdndys byfoore  
A grete Roobucke ye cast hym not so  
Bot a fayre Roobucke and a fayre doo  
With the bowellis and With the bloode  
Relbarde ye yowre holdndes my sonnys so goode  
**A**nd eche foote ye shall cutte in . iii . I yowr hame  
Take the bowellis and the bloode and do all to gedre then  
Neuyth hit than to yowre holdndys so  
And moche the glaadder then thax Wilt go  
That to yowre holdndes a rellarde is call  
For hit is eten on the grownde and on the steyne dulle  
**T**he Roo shall be herdeled by veneri I bene  
The . ii . forther legges the hede layde by elbene  
And take oon ender legge up I yowr pray  
And that oder forder legge right as I yowr say  
Upon the oder forder legge booth ye hym pytte  
And With that other forther legge up ye hym knytte  
Don thys maner thus When ye haue broght  
All boole to the Rechen then hit shall be broght  
Sane that yowre holdndes ete : the bowellis and the fete .

## Now of thage & undoyng of the boore

**A**Now to speke of the boore the fyrst yere he is  
A pygge of the Sounder called ale haue I blis  
The secunde yere an hogge and so shall he be  
And an hoggestere When he is of yeres . iii .  
And When he is of . iii . yere a beore shett he be  
From the Sounder of the swyne then departh he  
A Spnguler is he so : for a lone he Witt goo .  
When ye haue slayn the boore and Witt to hym right  
Ye shall vndo hym vnflayne When he shall be dight  
Xxx . breedys and . ii . of hym ye shall make  
By the lobb of vnery as I dare vnder take  
Thurgh yollre boundys by strength iff that he be dede  
They shall haue the wolpyllis boyle With the brede  
Cast vpon the grounde thur the boore Was slayne  
And that is calde a Redarde so hunteris it sayne  
vpon the erth so haue I blis : for that so æten is

## Now of the hare .

**A**Now for to speke of the hare my sonnyes seareli  
That best kyng shall be calde of all vnery  
For all the fayre spekyng and blabyng leif fere  
Commyth of sedyng and fyndyng of the hare  
For my leif chylder I take it on honde  
He is the meruellest best that is in ony londe  
For he fyndes and crotis and Roungeth euermoore  
And beareth talow and gas : and a boue teeth hath he soore  
And othe While he is male : and so ye shall hym fynde  
And othe While female and kyndelis by kynde

**A**nd When he is female and kyndelis hym With in  
 In . iij . degrees he hem beith or he With hem thyn  
 Too Rough and . ii . smoth Who With hem se  
 And ij . knotis also that kyndelis With be  
 When he is female so tell I my tale .

### **The rewarde for howndys .**

**W**hen yowre howndes by strength hath done her to dede  
 The hunter shall rewarde hem then With the herte  
 With the shulderis and the sides and With the bowellis all  
 And all thyng With in the Bombe save onli the gatt  
 The pounche also : geve hem noon of thoo .  
 With rewarde When oon the erth it is dalt.  
 With all goode hunteris the . halow . it is calt  
 Then the loynes of the hare loke ye not forgete  
 Bot bring hem to the kechyn for the lordis meete  
 And of this ilke hare speke we no more .

### **Wiche beestes shall be flayne & wich scripte**

**A**ll to speke of the beestes When they be flayne  
 How many be scripte and how many be flayne  
 All that beere skyne and wolow and Rounge leue me  
 Shall be flayne save the hare for he shall scripte be  
 And all that beith grece : and piles ther upon  
 Ever shall be scripte When they be condon  
 On thers maner play : thus ye shall say .

## Whiche beestis shall be reide with the lymmer .

**A** My dere sonnes echeon now Wilt I yow telle  
How many maner beestes as With the lymmer  
Shall be vnterprete in fryth or in felde  
Booth the hert and the bukke and the boore so Wille  
And all other beestes that huntid shall be  
Shall be sought and founde With Ratchis so fre  
Say thus I yow tolde : my childe so tolde

## The discreuyng of a Bucke .

**A** And ye speke of the Bucke the fyrst yere he is  
A fawne, folowynge on his dam say as I yow this  
The secunde yere a preket . the . iij . yere a folwett  
A folwe at the . iij . yere the trobete I yow tell  
The . v . yere call hym a Bucke of the fyrst herte  
The . vi . yere call hym a Bucke and so as I yow telle

## Of the hornys of a Bucke .

**T**he hornys of a grete Bucke or he so be  
Most be summyd as I say herkenyth to me  
Too braunches first palyngd he most haue  
And . iij . aduancers the soth iff ye Wilt saue  
And xxiii . espelers and then ye may hym call  
Where so ye be a grete Bucke I tell yow all

## Of the Roobucke .

**A** And iff ye of the Roobucke Wilt knowe the name  
The first yere he is a kyte folowynge on his dame

The secunde yere he is a gerle : and so he sicht all  
 The thirde yere an hennule loke ye hym call  
 Robucke of the first hede he is at the iii . yere  
 The . v . yere a Roobucke hym call I yow lete  
 At saynt andrews day his hornys he wiltt cast  
 In moore or in moos he hidyth hem fast  
 So that no man may hem sone fynde  
 Ellys in certayn he doos not his kynde  
**A**t saynt Jamps day Where so he go  
 Then shall the Roobucke gendre With the Roo  
 And so boldely thez as ye durne  
 Then is he calde a Roobucke goyng in his turne  
 And iff ye may a Robucke sle With olt any fayle  
 And ye fynde that heue grece at his taylor  
 As sum Robuckys haue When ye hit fynde  
 Then shall ye see it as ye do of hert and of hynde  
 Also the Robucke as hit is Wele kyde  
 At holrode day he gooth to Ryde .  
 And wisch the bit : When he may gete hit

### Now of the hert and of the hynde .

**A** Sonnyes of the hert and the hynde lerne yit ye may  
 Thez thay drab to the herte at holi roode day  
 To the stepe then thay goon yche hote day at noon  
 Which stepe thay wsen my chylder I yow say  
 Till hit be Myddesomere at the last day  
 The cause of the stepe is to Weere hym fro the flee  
 Who so commyth to that place may se hit With his ight  
 An other thyng thay wse my chylde also  
 The same seson of the yere to soyle to go

## Of the crying of thes beestes .

**I**n her belobys and a bucke goons I fynde  
And iche Roobucke certayne bellus by kynde  
The noyes of theses beestes thus ye shall call  
For prynces of thesre make thay wsen hit all  
Say chylde Wylde ye goo : yowre dame tught you so

## Merke well thes lesone folowynge.

**T**yme of grace begynneth at mydsomer day  
And tyll holi Roode day lasteth as I you say  
**T**he seson of the fox fro the Natyvyte  
Tyll the annunacion of ooure lady fre  
**S**eson of the Robucke at Ester shall begynne  
And tyll mychelmas lasteth nygh or she blynne  
**T**he seson of the Roe begynneth at Michelmas  
And hit shall endure and last untill Candilmas  
**A**t Michelmas begynneth huntynge of the hare  
And lasteth tyll mydsomer thes nyxt no man hit spare  
**T**he seson of the Wolfe is in iche cuntre  
At the seson of the fox and euermore shall be  
**T**he seson of the boore is from the Natyvyte  
Tyll the purification of ooure lady so fre  
For at the Natyvyte of ooure lady swete  
He may fynde Wylde he goth vnder his feete  
Booth in Bodys and felous come and oour frute  
When he after foode maketh any sute  
Crabbes and acorns and nottes thes thay growb  
Halbes and bepes and other thyngs ynowb  
That tyll the purification lasteth as ye se  
And maketh the Boore in seson to be  
For Wylde that frute may : last his tyme is neuer past

## Of the hunting of the haare

**N**ow to speake of the haare hold all shall be brought  
 When she shall both houndes be founden and sought  
 The first worde to the houndis that the hunt shall obtayn  
 Is at the kennell doore when he openys it  
 That all may hym here: he shall say ariere.  
 For his houndes wolde cum to hastely  
 That is the first worde my sonne of venery  
 And when he hath couplyd his houndes pchoon  
 And is forth with hem to the felde goon  
 And when he has of cast his collyples at witt  
 Then shall he speke and say his houndes titt  
 Hors de couple auant se auant tiorz so  
 And then So ho so ho. thries and no mo  
 And then say. Sa sa cy auant So hold I you pray  
 And iff ye se yowre houndes haue goode witt to renne  
 And draw a Rapwarde fro yowr say as I yowr kenne  
 There hold amy. agayne hym call so  
 Then. Sbeff mon amy sbeff. to make hym soft go  
 And iff any fynde of the haare thez he hath bene  
 And he hight Richer or Remounde thus to hym bene  
 Oyes a Remounde le Vaillant. and I shall you a bolde  
 O' quida troy la colbarde on la court colwe  
 That Remounde the worthe with obtayn fayle  
 That Remounde to fynde the colward with the short tiple

**A**nd iff ye se wher the haare at pasture hath bene  
 Iff hit be in the tyme of the come grene  
 And iff yowre houndes chace best at yowre witt  
 Then. ih. motus shall ye blaw both lowe and hilt



Ther oon and there an other there be pasturde has  
 When say . illoques illoques in thesame place  
 So say to hem in kynde : onto tyme that ye his fynde  
 And then cast a signe att the feld aboute  
 To se at her pasture Where she hath be in or olde  
 Ouz at his forme for gladi to be she is not lese  
 Ther she hath pasturid in tyme of Relese  
 And any hounde fynd or musyng of his mace  
 Ther as she hath byne and is goon out of that place  
 Ha se touz cy est pl . so shalt ye say  
 wenez auez so hold fa . also lorde as ye may  
 Sa cy ad este so hold . after that  
 Sa fa cy auant . and therof be not lat  
 And When ye se onto the playne her at the last  
 In feld or in erabult londe : or in to the Wode past  
 And polbre hounde Wilt fynde of her ther then  
 Say . la douce amy la est a . and so as I polb ken  
 That is to say swete frende : ther is he come hold  
 For to dry here . and ther With ye shalt say so hold  
 Illoques ey douce ey waylaunt so hold so hold . then thy  
 Thus may ye nold dere sonnyes leue of wenez  
 And When ye come ther as ye trow he Wilt dwelt  
 And so semeth to polb Wilt then say as I polb tell  
 Ha douce la est a wenez . for to dwelt thore  
 And therWith . in . so hold . say ye no moore  
 And iff it semes Wolt polb to fynde att in fere  
 And Wenen so to do then say . douce hold here hold here  
 Hold here douce hold here hold here he litty  
 So shalt ye say my chylde and for no thyng litty  
 Att maner bestys that euer chafede Wore  
 Haue oon maner of Wode . so hold . and no moore

To fulfill or confist eche maner of chase  
 The hunt euermoore in his moloth that Worde he haas  
 And iff yowre boundys at a chase renne thez ye hunt  
 And the best begynne to renne as hertis be Wont  
 Or for to hanplon as doos the fop With his gyle  
 Or for to crosse as the Roo dooth ooz While  
 Ooz dwelt so that yowre boundys cannot olde go  
 Then shall ye say. hoo sa ampy sa sa  
 A complex sa arete so hold. sich is the play  
 And sohold as moch is as sa hold to say  
 Bot for. sohold. is short in speche When it is brought  
 Therefore say We. sohold bot sa hold say We nocht  
 And iff yowre boundis chase at hert or at haare  
 And thay renne at defaute thus ye shall say there  
 Icy sohold assayne assayne ston who  
 Sa assayne arete sohold theis Wordes and no moo  
 And iff yowre boundes renne Westt at fop or at doo  
 And so faple at defaute say thus ferther or ye goo  
 Ho to oze swef aluy douce a luy. that thay here  
 Ho hoy assayne assayne sa arete  
 So hold so hold wenez a coupler. and do as I yoll kenne  
 The moore Worshyp may ye haue among alt mewe  
 Yowre craftis let be kynde: and do as I yoll bydde  
 Allt my sonnyis in some: and thus may ye honne of game

The booke that the mayster hunter makyth to  
 his man now here folowng ye may here.

The mayster to his man makyth his Roys  
 That he knowith be kynde What the hert doys  
 At huntynge euermoore When he goys

Quod the man to his maister that were good loore  
For to knowe what he does the houndes before  
What dooth he mayster quod the man  
He dooth quod he caryn as thow mayst se  
Berkpeth .and so dooth no best but he  
When berkpeth he quod the man What is that to say  
With his feet he oppres the earth ther he gooth a way  
What is the cause quod the man naister 3 the pray  
That the hert be fore the houndes When thay hym hunt ay  
That then to the Ryuer he Wellis for to goon  
Quod the maister to the man ther ar causes toon

**Fo. ii.** causes the hert desirith to the Ryuer . n  
note wele theis termys folowng descende n oder

**C**on cause for the Ryuer descende he is ay  
And so is he to the Water When he takith the way  
Why callist thow hym . descende . mayster 3 the pray  
For he payris of is myght the sooth 3 the say  
A nother is to the Water Whi he gooth other Whyle  
The houndes that hym sellen to fownde to begyle  
**C**ut of this hert quod his man maister Wolde 3 ken  
In to the Water When he leppes What he makes then  
He proferith quod the mayster and so ye shall say  
For he dot not hym selfe put holt he Wilt a way  
Whether ouer the Water he Wilt for passe  
Or turne agen thessame way ther he fyrst Was  
Therefore hit is profite as theys hunteris sayne  
And Reprofer iff thessame way he turne agen

At that ower side of the Water iff he cop sterte  
 Then shall he call hit the soule of the hert  
 And that is for the Water of his legges Beete  
 Dolours in to the steppes ther fallyn of his fete  
 Open the Water his Way euen iff he hent  
 Then beryth he Water ther to take godd tent  
 And iff With the Water go algate godd hit shall  
 Defoulant the Water an hert so hym call

## Now of the Nomblys nether wele the termys

¶ The man to his master speketh full blyth  
 Off the nomblys of the hert that he Bolde hym kith  
 Thow mong endys ther shall be hym With mine  
 Quod the master bot oon thyk nor thynne  
 And that is bot the Sargilon to speke of all bi dene  
 And all thyng ower . ewkes and? Roundelis . bene

## The Auuncers . the Forchers

¶ Wit Bolde I Wit and thow Boldest me leere  
 The ewkes and the Roundellis of the Nomblys of p<sup>e</sup> dere  
 Don croke of the Nomblys lyth euermoore  
 vnder the throte bolle of the best be foot  
 That callid is . auuncers . who so can hem here  
 And the hyndermost parte of the Nomblys there  
 That is to say the forchers that liggyn euen betwene  
 The . n . thyngs of the best that ower ewkis euen

In the Mydref that callid is the wondit also  
For the sides wolnde a tolde couen it is fro  
My deere sonys holde : say of game I thus yow told

**C**pit Holde I Witt maister Whi theys boundes all  
Bayen and copen When thay hym ceche shall  
For thay Wolde haue helpe that is thayr skylt  
For to flee the best that thay renne tyll

**T**ell me mayster quod the man What is the skylt  
Why the haare Wolde so sayne renne agens the hilt  
Quod the mayster for hys leagys be shorter be foote  
Then be hynde : that is the skylt of poore

**W**hat is the cause quod the man y<sup>e</sup> men say of y<sup>e</sup> best  
That the haare sittith aye When she takyth hys rest  
And oðer bestys ly : as comuneli men sayne  
For .ij. causes quod the mayster I tell the ployne  
Oon is for she hurteles oppon hys houghis ay  
And all oðer bestys : can she side to the grownde lay  
An oðer cause ther is and that is noo less  
For she breyth both selbet and pure grece

**C**pit Holde I mayster quod the man sayne Witt more  
Wher lyth the fuet of the haare be hynde or befoore  
Ouer the loyne quod the mayster of iche haare thow take  
By this the tale and the chyne euen oon the backe

**C**pit Holde I mayster quod the man thys at the lez  
What thow walkest in the felde With thy lymers  
Ther as an hys pastured hath : or y<sup>e</sup> thow hym se  
To knaue faatt or lene Withes that he be  
I can quod the mayster Best tell the thys caas  
Whate Bele Wher he lay : and Wher he fumed haas

**A**nd When he is female and kyndelis hym With in  
In . iij . degrees he hym beith or he With hym elygh  
Too Rough and . ij . smoth Who With hym se  
And ij . knotis also that kyndelis With be  
When he is female so tell I my tale .

### **T**he rewarde for howndys .

**W**hen yowre houndis by strength hath done her to dede  
The hunter shall rewarde hym then With the hede  
With the shulderis and the sides and With the bollellis all  
And all thyng With in the Wombe save onli the gatt  
The pounce also : geue hem noon of thoo .  
With rewarde When oon the erth it is dalt.  
With all goode hunteris the . halow . it is calt  
Then the loynes of the hare loke ye not forgete  
Bot bryng hym to the kychyn for the lordis meete  
And of this ilke hare speke we no more .

### **W**iche bestes shall be flayne & wich scripte

**N**ow to speke of the bestes When they be flayne  
How many be scripte and how many be flayne  
All that here flyne and talow and Rounge leue me  
Shall be flayne save the hare for he shall scripte be  
And all that beith grece : and piles ther upon  
Ever shall be scripte When they be vndonon  
On thes maner play : thus ye shall say .

Whiche beestis shall be reide with the lymmer .

**A** My dere sonnyes echeon now Wilt I yow telle  
How many maner beestes as With the lymmer  
Shall be vnterprete in fryth or in felde  
Booth the hert and the bukke and the boore so Wilde  
And all other beestes that huntid shall be  
Shall be sought and founde With Ratchis so fre  
Say thus I yow tolde : my chylder so tolde

### The discreuyng of a Bucke .

**A** And ye speke of the Bucke the fyrst yere he is  
A fawne, folowynge on his dam say as I yow wis  
The secunde yere a preket . the . iij . yere a solbrett  
A solbre at the . iiii . yere the trobete I yow tell  
The . v . yere call hym a Bucke of the fyrst herte  
The . vi . yere call hym a Bucke and do as I yow telle

### Of the hornys of a Bucke .

**T**he hornys of a grete Bucke or he so be  
Most be summyd as I say herkenyth to me  
Too braunches first passyng he most haue  
And . iiii . avouncers the soth iff ye Wilt saue  
And xxiii . espelers and then ye may hym call  
Wher so ye be a grete Bucke I tell yow all

### Of the Roobucke .

**A** And iff ye of the Roobucke Wilt knowe the name  
The first yere he is a Rye foukyng on his dame

The secunde yere he is a gerle : and so he sicht all  
 The thirde yere an hennule loke ye hym call  
 Robucke of the first yere he is at the iii . yere  
 The . v . yere a Roobucke hym call I yow lere  
 At saynt andrews day his hornys he wiltt cast  
 In moore or in moos he hidyth hem fast  
 So that no man may hem sone fynde  
 Ellys in certayn he doos not his kynde  
**A**t saynt Jamys day there so he go  
 Then shall the Roobucke gendre with the Roo  
 And so boldly ther as ye durne  
 Then is he calde a Roobucke goyng in his turne  
 And if ye may a Robucke sle with olt any sayle  
 And ye fynde that hre grece at his taylor  
 Als sum Robuckys haue when ye hit fynde  
 Then shall ye see it as ye do of hert and of hynde  
 Also the Robucke as hit is beele kynde  
 At holpote day he gooth to Ryde .  
 And wifith the bit : when he may gete hit

### Now of the hert and of the hynde .

**A** Sonnyes of the hert and the hynde leme ye may  
 They thay drab to the herde at holi roode day  
 To the stepe then thay goon yche hote day at noon  
 Which stepe thay wsen my childer I yow say  
 Tilt hit be Myddesomere at the last day  
 The cause of the stepe is to beere hym fro the flee  
 Who so commyth to that place may se hit with his ight  
 An other thyng thay wse my chylde also  
 The same seson of the yere to fole to go



## Of the cryng of thes beestes .

**A**n her belovys and a bucke groons I fynde  
And iche Roobucke certayne bellus by kynde  
The noyes of theses beestes thus ye shall call  
For prynces of thesre make thay wsen hit all  
Say chylde Wylde ye goo : yowre dame tught you so

## Merke well thes selyngs folowynge.

**T**yme of grace begynneth at mydsomer day  
And tyll holi Roode day lasteth as I you say

**T**he selyng of the fox fro the Natyvyte  
Tyll the annunciation of ooure lady fre

**S**elyng of the Robucke at Ester shall begynne  
And tyll mychelmas lasteth nygh or she blynne

**T**he selyng of the Roo begynneth at Michelmas  
And hit shall endure and last untill Candilmas

**A**t Michelmas begynneth huntynge of the hare  
And lasteth tyll mydsomer thes nygh no man hit spare

**T**he selyng of the Wolfe is in iche cuntre  
At the selyng of the fox and evermore shall be

**T**he selyng of the boore is from the Natyvyte  
Tyll the purification of ooure lady so fre

For at the Natyvyte of ooure lady swete

He may fynde Wylde he goth under his fete

Booth in Rodys and feldis come and oour frute

When he after foode maketh any sute

Crabbes and acorns and nottes thes thay grow

Halbes and beppes and oother thyngs ynow

That tyll the purification lasteth as ye se

And maketh the Boore in selyng to be

For Wylde that frute may : last his tyme is neuer past

## Of the hunting of the haare

**N**ow to speke of the haare how all shall be brought  
 When she shall both houndes be founden and sought  
 The first worde to the houndis that the hunt shall owt pite  
 Is at the kennell doore when he openys it  
 That all may hym here: he shall say ariere.  
 For his houndes holde cum to hastely  
 That is the first worde my sonne of venery  
 And when he hath couplyd his houndes ychoon  
 And is forth with hem to the felde goon  
 And when he has of cast his collyples at witt  
 Then shall he speke and say his houndes titt  
 Hous de couple auant se auant hors so  
 And then So ho so ho. thies and no mo  
 And then say. Sa se cy auant So how I you pray  
 And iff ye se yowre houndes haue goode witt to renne  
 And draw a Rapwarde fro yowr say as I yowr kenne  
 There how am. agayne hem call so  
 Then. Sweff mon am sweff. to make hem soft go  
 And iff any fynde of the haare thez he hath bene  
 And he hight Riches or Remounde thus to hym beene  
 Oyes a Remounde le vaillant. and I shall you a howe  
 O' quida troy la colbarde on la court colwe  
 That Remounde the Worthe with owt any fayle  
 That Benpeth to fynde the coward with the short taylor

**A**nd iff ye se where the haare at pasture hath bene  
 If hit be in the tyme of the come grene  
 And iff yowre houndes chace best at yowre witt  
 Then. ih. motis shall ye blab booth lowe and shitt

Thre oon and there an other there be pasturde þus  
 When say . illoques illoques in thesame place  
 So say to hym in kynde: vnto tyme that ye his fynde  
 And then cast a signe att the feld a toldre  
 To se at his pasture Where she hath be in or olde  
 Owe at his forme for gladi to be she is not lese  
 Ther she hath pasturid in tyme of (Relese  
 And any hounde fynd or musyng of his mace  
 Ther as she hath byne and is goon olt of that place  
 Tha se thouz cy est ell . so shalt ye say  
 wenez auez so hold fa . also loldre as ye may  
 Sa cy ad este so hold . after that  
 Sa fa cy auant . and therof be not lat  
 And When ye se vnto the playne her at the last  
 In feld or in embult londe: or in to the Wode past  
 And polbre hounde Wilt fynde of her ther then  
 Say . la douce amy la est a . and so as I polb ken  
 That is to say swete frende: ther is he come lold  
 For to dry here . and ther With ye shalt say so hold  
 Illoques cy douce cy waplant so hold so hold . then thy  
 Thus may ye nold dere sonys leine of wenez  
 And When ye come ther as ye twold he Wilt dwelt  
 And so semeth to polb Wilt then say as I polb tell  
 La douce la est a wenez . for to dwelt thore  
 And ther With . in . sohold . say ye no moore  
 And iff it semes Wolt polb to fynde att in fere  
 And Wenen so to do then say . douce hold here hold here  
 Hold here douce hold here hold here by litye  
 So shalt ye say my chylde and for no thyng litye  
 Att maner bestys that euer chafede Wore  
 Haue oon maner of Wode . so hold . and no moore

To fulfill or confill eche maner of chace  
 The hunt euermoore in his mowth that Worde he haas  
 And iff yowre boundys at a chace renne thes ye hunt  
 And the best begynne to renne as hertis be Wont  
 Or for to hanplon as doos the fop With his gyle  
 Or for to crosse as the Roo dooth oder While  
 Oder dwelt so that yowre boundys cannot olde go  
 Then shall ye say. hoo sa amy sa sa  
 A complex sa arete so holt. sich is the play  
 And soholb as moch is as sa holt to say  
 Bot for. soholb. is short in speche When it is brought  
 Therefore say We. soholb bot sa holt say We noght  
 And iff yowre houndis chace at hert or at haare  
 And thay renne at defaute thus ye shall say thare  
 Jey soholb assayne assayne ston who  
 Sa assayne arete soholb theis Bordes and no moe  
 And iff yowre houndes renne Westt at fop or at doo  
 And so faple at defaute say thus ferther or ye goo  
 Ho ho ore swef aluy douce a luy. that thay hert  
 Ho hoy assayne assayne sa arete  
 So holt so holt wenez a coupler. and do as I yow kenne  
 The moore Worshyp may ye haue among alt menne  
 Yowre craftis let be kynde: and do as I yow bydde  
 Allt my sonys in same: and thus may ye honne of game

The booke that the mayster hunter makyth to  
 his man now here folowng ye may here.

The mayster to his man makyth his Rops  
 That he knowith be kynde What the hert doys  
 At huntynge euermoore When he goys

Quod the man to his maister that were good loore  
 For to knowe what he does the houndes before  
 What dooth he mayster quod the man  
 He dooth quod he sayn as thow mayst se  
 Berkyth .and so dooth no best bot he  
 When berkyth he quod the man What is that to say  
 With his feete he opprys the earth ther he gooth a way  
 What is the cause quod the man naister 3 the pray  
 That the hert be fore the houndes When thap hym hunt ay  
 That then to the Ryuer he Wellis for to goon  
 Quod the maister to the man ther ar causes toon

**For. ii. causes the hert desirith to the Ryuer . n**  
**note wele theis termys folowng descende n oder**

**C**on cause for the Ryuer descende he is ay  
 And so is he to the Water When he takith the way  
 Why callist thow hym . descende . mayster 3 the pray  
 For he payris of is myght the sooth 3 the say  
 A nother is to the Water Whi he gooth other Whyle  
 The houndes that hym sellen to fownde to begyle  
**C**ut of this hert quod his man maister Wolde 3 ken  
 In to the Water When he lepps What he makes then  
 He proferith quod the mayster and so ye shall say  
 For he bot not hym selfe put holt he Wilt a way  
 Whether ouer the Water he Wilt for passe  
 Or turne apen thessame way ther he first Was  
 Therefore hit is profre as theys hunteris sayne  
 And Reprofer iff thessame way he turne apene

At that ower side of the Water iff he cop sterte  
 Then shalt ge call hit the soule of the hert  
 And that is for the Water of his leggee Beete  
 Solone in to the steppis ther fallyn of his fete  
 Myen the Water his Way euen iff he hant  
 Then berkyth he Water ther to take yow tent  
 And iff With the Water go algate yow hit shall  
 Defoulant the Water an hert so hym call

## Now of the Nomblys nether wele the terryngs

The man to his master speketh full blyth  
 Off the nomblys of the hert that he wolde hym rich  
 Thow mong endys ther shall be hym With me  
 Quod the master bot oon thyk nor thynne  
 And that is bot the Gasgilon to speke of all bi dene  
 And all thyng ower ewkes and Roundelis bene

## The Auuncers . the Forchers

Wit Wolde I Wit and thow Woldest me leere  
 The ewkes and the Roundellis of the Nomblys of p<sup>r</sup> dere  
 Don croke of the Nomblys lyth ewermoores  
 Under the thwote bolle of the best be foore  
 That callid is . auuncers . Who so can hem here  
 And the hyndermost parte of the Nomblys there  
 That is to sepe the Forchers that liggyn euen betwene  
 The . n . thyngs of the best that ower ewkis eue

In the Mydref that callid is the wondit also  
For the sides wolnde a tolde cozen it is fro  
My dere sonys holde : say of game I thus yow told

**C**rit Holde I Witt maister Whi theys houndes all  
Bayen and cryen When thay hym ceche shall  
For thay Wolde haue helpe that is thayr skylt  
For to flee the best that thay renne tyll

**T**ell me mayster quod the man What is the skylt  
Why the haare Wolde so fayme renne agens the hilt  
Quod the mayster for hys legges be shorter be foote  
Then be hynde : that is the skylt of poore

**W**hat is the cause quod the man y<sup>e</sup> men say of y<sup>e</sup> best  
That the haare sittith aye When she takyth hys rest  
And oðer bestys ly : as comuneli men sayne  
For .ij. causes quod the mayster I tell the ployne  
Oon is for she hurteles oppon hys houghis ay  
And all oðer bestys : can she side to the grounde lay  
An oðer cause ther is and that is noo less  
For she breyth both selbet and pure grece

**C**rit Holde I mayster quod the man sayne Witt more  
Wher lyth the fuet of the haare be hynde or befoore  
Ouer the loyne quod the mayster of iche haare thow take  
By this the tale and the chyne euen oon the backe

**C**rit Holde I mayster quod the man thys at the lez  
What thow walkest in the felde With thy lymers  
Ther as an hys pastured hath : or y<sup>e</sup> thow hym se  
To knaue faatt or lene Withes that he be  
I can quod the mayster Best tell the thys caas  
Whate Bele Wher he lay : and Wher he sumeped haas

Molde and englaymede iff that it be  
Then is he fatt & the tell lerne theys of me  
And iff it be booth blacke and harde and clene  
Then he is meagre lare and leene  
And of thes ilke thyng iff thou leue not me  
Take heed in the Wyntre and then thou may it se

**A** Myt mayster of the harte sayn Wolde & Wit moore  
What he dooth When he gooth the holdnys befoore  
The soth and resoorth ther he gooth a Way  
Pryncyth and repyncyth the sooth for to say  
Bot that is that quod the man When thay so done  
That shalt & quod the mayster tell the full soone  
In the felwes Wher he gooth no Ways bene  
Ther he soth When he steppth and hit may not be seene  
And after When he dooblyth and turnyth agaynne  
Then he resoorth as goode hunters saynne  
And When he rennyth in the Way dry or Wete  
Then men may fynde fostalp of clees or of feete  
That pryncyth the harte aye When he dooth soo  
And repyncyth then iff he agaynne goo

**A** Maister yit quod the man What is this to say  
A wauntellay a lay .and a Relay .  
That shalt & tell the quod he : for a littill byzete  
When the holdnys ar set : an hert for to mete  
And othez hym chasen and folowyn to take  
Then all the Relais thou may vpon hem make  
Even at his comyng yf thou lett thy holdnys goo  
While the odes that be behynde fer arn hym froo  
That is . a wauntelay . and so thou shalt hit call  
For thay are than fer before thos odes holdnys all



And an hynderynge geete all oðer contist  
 For thay may not that day nomore selbe at Wilt  
 And holde thyn houndes seylt iff that thow so do  
 Tilt all the houndes that be behynd be cum ther to  
 Than let thyn houndes all to gedre goo  
 That called is an allay . and looke thow say so  
 And that hynderynge is yit to them that be behynd  
 For the restede with ouer go the Beere by hynde  
 A relay is after Whyn the houndes ar past  
 For be fore With the hert that hiet hym fast  
 To let thyn houndes fer after hym goon  
 And that is then a fortherynge to hym echoon  
 For and thyn houndes haue ouertake thees oðer bi destres  
 Then shalt they all folue hym of oon sibestnes

### What is a forloping .

Wit mayster Wolde I sayn thus at yow leere  
 What is a forloping for that is goode to here  
 That shalt I say the quod by the soch at lest  
 Whyn thy houndes in the Wode sechyn any best  
 And the best is stolt aWay olde of the fyrth  
 Or the houndes that thow hast meten therwith  
 And any oðer houndes before : than may with hym mete  
 Thees oðer houndes arn then forloped I the hte  
 For the beste and the houndes arn so fer before  
 And the houndes be hynde be Beere and soore  
 So that thay may not at the best cum at ther Wilt  
 The houndes before forlopede hym and that is the sylt  
 Thay be ay so fere be fore to me iff thow wilt trust  
 And thys is the forlopede leere hit iff thow lust

## Whiche thre thynges cause the houndes to endure

**A** Mit Wolde I Wette mayster iff it Ware thy Wilt  
When thyn houndes renne an hert contitt  
And ap the forther they goo the gladder thay bene  
For . iij . causes quod he oft tyme is sene  
Don is When the hert rennyng fast on a rese  
He swetith that hit rennyth wolne thorough olde his clees  
The houndes When thay fynde of that it is swete  
Then as thay leuer to renne and lother to lete  
An oðer cause When the hert ny no moore may  
Then Wilt he White froth caste ther he gooth a way  
When thyn houndes fynde of that then as thay glad  
In hope thay shall hym haue and renne so rad  
The . iij . cause is of the hert When he is nygh dede  
Then he castys olde of his moloth froth and blade rede  
The houndes knaw that he shall be take soone than  
And euer the forther they goo the gladder they renne  
Thes as the causes . iij . that causes hem gladdre to be

## Whiche best a Hau hounde takis as sone as a swift

**A** What bestyt mayster I as it for non ylt  
That moost hoolle all houndes rennen contitt  
And also sone the slowest shall hym ouer take  
As the slowest shall do What way so euer he take  
That best a Hausyn hight a Brok or a Gray  
Thes . iij . nampes he hath the sooth for to say  
And this is cause therof : for he Wilt by kynde  
Go thorough thornys a way the thyrdest he may fynde  
Ther as the slowest houndes may no forther goo  
Then the slowest of foote be he neuer so thro

## Why the hare sumaps and cotes.

Pyt mayster Bolde I Bete Whi that men sayn  
That the haare sumaps and cotes booth playn  
And all other maner bestys that huntid be  
Fempon or fenon as the Bele hit se  
That shall I Bestt tell the quod the mayster then  
For Why that he femaps and cotes Bestt I ken  
He femaith for he beryth talow. this is no lare  
And he cotes men sayn for he breuth goes  
And Rousis on his houghis When he lettis it go  
And bestys of fih kynde fynde the no moo  
Holt mony bestis femapen mayster sayn I Bolde lare  
And holt many fenon that bare goode to here  
All this to tell quod the mayster I holt hit bot lyght  
All bestis that here talow and stonde spright  
Femapen When thay do so say as I the keme  
And all oer fenon that wolken wone theme.

## How nony maner bestis of veneri Releue

Althow many maner bestis pit mayster me tell  
Off veneri Releue by fyrth or by fellt  
To this quod the mayster I shall the answere  
Off all bestis bot . ii . the hert and the hare  
From the Annunciation of othe lady day  
The hert then releues the sooth for to say  
Till saynt Petris day and paule. and the hare right :  
From the Purification of othe lady bright :  
Till the translation Relays : leue ye me  
Off saynt Thomas tide of Caunturburie .

## To vndo the wylde Boore .

**W**it my chyld of the boore for to speke moore  
When he shall be vndoone I tell you he foore  
ppij . breidis ye shall of hym make  
Now tell you my sonnes Wit Boore ye shall them take  
The first of them is the hede What euer he fallt  
An oter is the coler and so ye shall hit callt  
The sheldys on the sholderis : therof shall . ij . be  
Then eyder side of the shoyne departid in . iij .  
The prestellis and the gambons depte them . ij .  
And . ij . feletys he hath : forgete not thoo  
Then take is legges and is feete & shewyth youre sleight  
For they shall of his breidis be countid for . viij .  
Departith the chyne in . iiii . peas and nomoo  
And take the polre breidis . ppp . and . ij .  
And saye put the grece When it is take a Way  
In the bladder of the boore my chyld I you pray  
For hit is a medecyne : for mony maner pyne

## How ye shall breek an Hert .

**A**nd for to speke of the hert While he thynke oon  
My chyld first ye shall hym fue When he shall be vndoone  
And that is for to say or euer ye hym dyght  
With in his olue hornys to lay hym vpright  
At thessay cut hym that lordys may see :  
A noon fat or leen Wher that he be  
Then cut of the coddys the hely euen froo  
Or ye begynne hym to fle : and then shall ye goo

At chaullis : to begynne as sone as ye may  
 And slyttith hym doone euen to the assay  
 And fro the assay euen doone the bele shall ye slit  
 To the piffitt ther the corde Was a way lpytt  
 Then slit the lyfte legge euen first before  
 And then the lyfte legge by hynde or ye do moore  
 And thees oðer legges vpon the right syde  
 vpon thessame maner slyt ye that syde  
 To goo to the chekys looke ye be prest  
 And so fleeth hym doone euen to the brest  
 And so fleeth hym forth right vnto the assay  
 Euen to the place Where the corde Was cut a way  
 Then fleeth thessame wyse all that oðer syde  
 Bot let the taylt of the best styt the oon byde  
 Than shall ye hym vnder my chyldre 3 yowde Rede  
 Ryght vpon his adone skynne and lay hit on brede  
 Take brede of the cuttyng of thessame deere  
 And begynne first to make the Erber  
 Than take olt the shulderis . and slyttith a noon  
 The baly to the syde from the corbyn bone  
 That is corbyns fee : at the deeth he Will be  
 Then take olt the selbet that hit be not laste  
 For that my chyldre is good for lechecraft  
 Than put chyn bonde softly vnder the brest bone  
 And the shall ye take olt thezber a noon  
 Than put olt the paunch . and from the paunch taas :  
 A way Wighthly the Kate sich . as he haas  
 Hoole it with a fyngre . do as 3 yowde kenne  
 And With the bloode and the grece fillith hit theme  
 Looke threde that ye haue and nedest theto :  
 For to sewe it With all or ye moore do .

The smale guttis than ye shall obt pyt  
From hem take the maib . forget not it .  
Than take obt the leuer . and lay hit on the skynne  
And after that the bladder With obt moore dynne  
Than dresse the Nombles : first that ye take  
Dolone the auncers kerue that cleues to the necke  
And dolone With the holthrote put them a noon  
And kerue wop the flesh thez wop to the backe boon  
And so forth the fillittis that ye wop arewe  
That falluth to the nombles . and shall be thez :  
With the neres also and selbit : that thez is  
Euen to the mydrypf that wypon hym is  
Than take dolone the mydryf from the sides hooke  
And haue wop the nombles hooke by the holt throte  
In thyn hond than them holde . and looke and se  
That all that longith them to . to geder that thay be  
Than take them to thy broder to holde for tyste  
Whylis thold them dolblyst and dightis as the list  
Than a Way the lyghtis . and oon the skynne them lay  
To a byde the quere my chylde I yold pray .  
Than shall ye slyt the slough thez as the hert lith  
And take a Way the Eres from it and by slyth  
For sich hertis hath his hert : ay it wypon  
As men may se in the best When he is wndon  
And in the myddis of the hert a boon shall ye fynde  
Looke ye yeue hit to a lorde . and chylde be kynde  
For hit is kynde for mony malpides  
And in the myddis of the hert euermore it lies  
Than shall ye kyt the skynne the teeth euen fro  
And after the Ragger boon cuttis euen also  
The forthis : and the sydes euen betwene  
And looke that yoldre knyfe ay Wyttys bene

Than arne to the forches . and frote them With bloode  
 For to saue the greet . so do men of goode  
 Than shalt ye cut the nek the sydes euen fro  
 And the hede fro the nek cuttyth also  
 The toong the bryn the paunch and the necke  
 When thay beth be best With Water of the becke :  
 The smale guttis to the lightis in the deys :  
 A boue the best of the best When thow them sees  
 With all the bloode that ye may gete and bryn  
 All to geder shalt be take . and layde oon the skyn.  
 To geue yowre houndes . that callid is Jhis :  
 The quyre . a boue the skyn for it etyn is  
 And Who dightis hym so by my counsaile  
 Shalt haue the leste shuder for hys trauaile .  
 And the Right shulder Where so euer he be  
 Yeueth to the foster for that is his fee  
 And the lyuer also of thessame best  
 To the fosters knaue yeueth at the best  
 The nombles trustich in the skynne . and hardell hym fast  
 The sides and the forches to geder that thay last  
 With tender legges . be doon so it shall  
 Than bryng it hom . and the skynne With all  
 The nombles . and the hornes . at the lordis pate  
 Than boldly blow the price tharat .  
 Yowre play for to mynne . Or that ye come Yme

**E**xPLICIT Dam Iulians  
 Barnes in her boke of huntynge.

## **B**estis of the chace of the swete fewte a Cynhig.

**T**her be bestys of the chace : of the swete felste . And  
tho be the Bucke . the Doo . the Beere . the Reyno  
the Elke . the Spycard . the Otte . and the Marton .

**T**her be bestis of the chace of the synkyng felste And  
thay be the Roobucke . and the Roo . the Fulmar . the  
Fyche . the Hauke . the Graye . the Fox . the Squyrell .  
the Whittat . the Sol . and the Pulatte .

## **T**he namys of diuerse maner houndis

**T**his be the namys of houndes . First ther is a Grehound  
a Bastard . a Mengrell . a Mastyfe . a Lemor . a Spar  
nyell . Racheys . Kenettys . Teroures . Bocheris houndes .  
Myddynng dogges . Cyndestayles . and Spalherid curris .  
and smale ladies popis thai beere a Ray the flees and dyue  
ris smale fawtis .

## **T**he propreteis of a goode Grehound.

**A** Grehounde shulde be heded like a Snake . and necked  
like a Drake . Foted like a Rat . Tayled like a Rat .  
Spadd lyke a Teme . Chyned like a Heme

**T**he first yere he most lerne to fede . The secound yere to fel  
de hym lede . **T**he . iij . yere he is felow lyke . The . iiii .  
yere ther is noon sike **T**he . v . yere he is good ynough  
The . vi . yere he shall holde the plough **T**he vii yere he  
Bitt awayle : grete bittys for to assayle . **T**he viii . yere  
likeladitt . The . ix . yere carfadytt . **A** And Wynn he is com



my n to that yere : haue hym to the tanner . **C** For the best  
holende that eues biike hade . at . x . yere he is full badde

## The propretees of a goode hors .

**A** Goode hors shulde haue . x . propretees . and conditions .  
The first is to Wit . iij . of a man . iij . of a Roman . iij . of a fow  
iij . of an haare and . iij . of an asse .

Off a man wolde wolde and hardy .

Off a Roman fayre brestid faice of herte & esy to lip wypon .

Off a fow a faice taylor short eris With a goode trot .

Off an haare a grete eygh a dry herte . and Well rennyng

Off an asse a bigge chyne a flatte lege . and goode houe .

Well trauelid Women nez Well trauelid hors Bez neu goode

**A**rise early . serue god deuouteli . and the Worlde besily too  
the Werke Wiseli . geue thyn almesse secretly Go by the way sad;  
ly . Answer the peple demurely . Go to thi mete appetiteli .  
Sit ther at discretely . Of thi tonge be not to liberalli . Arise  
se therfrom tempratly . Go to thi soper soborly And to thy  
bedde mecelly . Be m thyn Inne Jocularly please thy loue du  
ly . And slepe surely .

## Of the wele theys . iiii thynges .

**T**he be . iij . thynges principall to be dread of euery Wise man  
The first is the cause of othere holy sader the pope .

The secunde is the indignacion of a prince Quia indignacion  
regis vel principis mors est

The thirde is the fauor or the Wilt of a Iuge .

The iij . is Schlaunder & the mutacion of a compaite .

Who that makith in Cristynmas a doog to his larder .  
And in March a Solb to is gardner .  
And in May a sole of a Whise manny's counsell .  
He shall neuer haue goode larder . sayre gardyn . Mer Be  
le keppe colncell .

For from thy kynny'smen kesse the .  
Wath not thy neighbor's next the .  
In a goode corne cuntry thre'st the .  
And sitte wolue Robyn and rest the .

Who that byldys his hous all of salobes .  
And prickyth a blynde hors ouer the salobys .  
And suffrith hys Wyfe to seche many halobys .  
God sende hym the blysse of euerlastyng galobis .

If theis be not directid then go thei at a ventyr

There be iii . thynges fitt harde for to knall .  
Wyche Way that thay Wilt draue .  
The first is the Wayes of a yong man .  
The secunde the cours of a vessaylt in the see .  
The thridde of an Eder or a serpent sprent .  
The .iiii . of a folle sittynge on any thyng .

Too Wyues in oon hous . too cattys and oon mous :  
Too dogges and oon boon : theis shall neu accorde i oon .

Who that manneth hym With his Ryne .  
And closith his croofte Wyth cherytes .  
Shall haue many legges brokenne .  
And also fitt lypptt goode serupes .

## The Companyes of beestys and fowlys .

A Herde of Hertis	a Pride of Lionys
an herde of all man dre	a Sleuth of Beeres
an Herde of Swannys	a Cete of Graies
an Herde of Cranys	a Herp of Conys
an Herde of Corlethys	a Riches of Martwons
an Herde of Brewnys	a Besynes of ferettis
an Herde of harlottys	a Grace of grehoundis of .ij
a Nye of ffeaumtys	a Hece of Grehoundis of .ij
a Herp of Ladies	a Coupult of spaynellis
a Herp of Roos	a Couple of rennyng houndis
a Herp of Quaylis	a Litter of Welpis
a Sege of brownyes	a Kyndyt of yong Cattis
a Sege of betouris	a Spnguler of Horis
a Sorde or a sute of malardis	a Dryft of tame Swayne
a Mustre of Pheochys	an Harasse of hysse
a Walke of Snytis	a Ragg of coltis or a Rake
a Congregation of peple	a Baren of Mulis
an Exaltynge of Larkis	a Tippe of Cete
a Roche of Nyghtingalis	a Tippe of haaris
an hoost of men	a Bagle of gees
a ffelethippynge of yomen	a Brode of hennys
a Chyme of Goldspynches	a badelyng of Dokis
a Cast of Brede	a Moonpaciens of Wyues
a Couple or a pyer of totillis	a State of Prynces
a flight of Doves	a Thongh of lawys
an unkyndenes of Rauenes	a prudens of wythris
a Claterynge of choughes	a Supslyte of Nunns
a Dissimulacion of breddis	a Schole of clerkes
a Route of Anyghtis	a Doctryne of doctoris

a Conūtyng of prechours  
a Sentence of Iuges  
a Dampnyng of Iurrouris  
a Diligens of Messangeris  
an Obrisians of fuauntis  
a Sete of wshers  
a Draught of woteletis  
a Proude sheldyng of taloris  
a Tempans of cokys  
a Stalke of fostenis  
a Boost of saudiouris  
a Laughtre of Osteloris  
a Blopyng of Tauerneis  
a Malepertnes of pedleris  
a Thraue of Throphetis  
a Squatte of Dalbrens  
a Fichtyng of beggers  
an wntrowth of sompneris  
a Melody of Harpers  
a Pauuerty of pyperis  
a soltelty of sergeauntis  
a Tabernacle of bakers  
a Drifte of fishers  
a Disgysyng of Taylours  
a Bleche of solteris  
a Smece of Corypouris  
a Clustre of Crappys  
a Clustre of chorlis  
a Rage of Maydmys  
a Rasull of knaups  
a blusyng of boyes

an wncredibilite of Cocoldis  
a Coupyng of partichis  
a Spryng of Telis  
a Desserte of Iapbyng  
a fallt of Woodcockis  
a Congregation of Pleuers  
a Couert of wotis  
a Quett of Turtillis  
a Titengis of Pies  
an Ost of spawbis  
a Swarme of bees  
a cast of haukis of y<sup>e</sup> tour. ii  
a Hece of theffame haukis. in  
a Flight of Goshaukes  
a Flight of shalobes  
a wldyng of Rockes  
a Murmuracion of steres  
a Route of Woluers  
a Leye of Letardis  
a Shreldenes of Apes  
a Skulke of Thrys  
a skulke of ffopis  
a Nest of Rabettis  
a Labor of Mollis  
a Mute of houndes  
a Kennell of Rachis  
a Sute of a lym  
a Cobardnes of curris  
a Soundre of Wilde fbyne  
a Stode of Mats  
a Hase of Assis

a Droue of Nete  
 a fflocke of Stepe  
 a Bagle of Women  
 a Pepe of chykemys  
 a Multipleng of husbondis  
 a Pontificalite of prelatys  
 a Dignyte of chanonys  
 a Charge of curatis  
 a Discecion of p̄estis  
 a Sulke of frenis  
 a bhomynable sight of mōris  
 a Scott of ffysh  
 a Example of Maisteris  
 an Obfuans of herimptis  
 an Eloquens of labeyetis  
 an Epeucion of Officeris  
 a faith of Marchandis  
 a pusion of steward of hous  
 a Keriff of Panteris  
 a Cedens of Selberis  
 an vnbelbyng of Reueris  
 a Safegarde of Porteris  
 a Blast of hunteris  
 a Thretenyng of courteyeris  
 a Wompe of Tapsteris  
 a Lyng of pardeners  
 a Mistebeue of paynteris  
 a Last of Carteris  
 a Scoldyng of Remsteris  
 a Wonderyng of Tynkeris

a Waybardnes of haybardis  
 a Worship of Bruteris  
 a Neuthriupng of Jogoleris  
 a ffaunch of Mylneris  
 a Festre of Bilberis  
 a Goryng of Bochoris  
 a Tynket of Corueseris  
 a fflowke of Shaurmeris  
 a Drunkship of Coblers  
 a Sulke of fopis  
 a Clustre of Notris  
 a Rage of the teethe  
 a Rascalt of Koperis  
 a Disworship of Scottis

¶ Explicit

**H**ere folow the deu termys to speke of breeth-  
yng or dressyng of dyuerse beestis and fowlis & f  
And thellame is shewed of certayn fylthes .

**A** Dere brokeme .  
a Goose rewe  
a Pigge hede and spede  
a Capon salsede  
a Cheoon frusshyd  
a Cong onlacede  
a Crane displayde  
a Curlew ontopntede  
a Ffesabnt alet  
a Quayle Byngged  
a Plouer Mynsed  
a Pegeon thyghed  
a Kralne leechyd  
a Sibanne lyfte  
a Lambe shulderide  
a Kide shulderide  
an Hen spoplede  
a Malarde onbrastid  
an Heron dysmembred  
a Pecoke disfigured  
a Geture ontachid  
a Hartich alet  
a Raale brestyde  
a Wodecokke thyghed  
an Egge Tyred  
a ffyre Tymbered

**N**ow of fylthes

a Salmon Chyned  
a Wyke splatted  
an Haddocke sided  
a Cheuen fynned  
a Sole loyned  
a Burnarde chyned  
a Tenche salced  
an Ele troufoned  
a Worme splayed  
a Harbitt tusked  
a Trought gobettid

**T**ye shall say thus .

An hert Herbourghith  
a Bucke lodgith  
an Esquyer lodgith  
a Roo beddith  
a poman beddith  
an haare in hert forme shul-  
deryng or leenyng .  
a Cong sittynge .  
a Wodecokke brekyng

**H**ere now folowng shall be shewed all the Shyres  
 And the Byschopryches of the realme of Englonde  
 And ye shall vnderstonde that the Shyres be written before  
 and the bisshopryches of the same as writ folowng next aft  
 and then afterward as shewed the Prouynces of this londe.

<b>A</b> Kent .	Caunturbury .	Rouchestre .
<b>A</b> Southesex .		Chychestre .
<b>A</b> Hampshe .	Suthere .	Wyndchestre .
<b>A</b> Wyldeshe .	Barkeshe .	Salisbury .
<b>A</b> Somersete she .	Dorset she .	Bathe .
<b>A</b> Deuonshere .	Cornelwale .	Excestur
<b>A</b> Essex .	Medesey .	London .
<b>A</b> Northfolke .	Suthfolke .	Mortmarche .
<b>A</b> Cambrigeshe .		Elye .

**A** Herebeton . Huntingdon . Northampton . Hertford . Bed  
 ford . Bokyngham . Opynford . Lyncolne . Lyncolne

<b>A</b> Gloucester .	Worcester .	Wigorn .
<b>A</b> Herefordshe .	Hereford .	
<b>A</b> Cheshere .	Shropshere .	pte of Lancashire .
		Cheshire .

**A** Northeshire . Staffordshe . Darbishes . Nottingham  
 she . and ower as parte of Lancastreshere . Northe .

### **P**rouynces of England .

**A** Caunturbury . and Northe . Stafford . Darby . Nottingham .  
 Northumberlonde . Durham . Westmerlonde . Emdale . Barlile





**H**ere in this booke folowynge is determyned the lynage  
of Coole armuris : and how gentylmen shall be knowen  
from vngentill men . and how bondage began first in aungell  
and after succeded in man kynde . as it is shewed in processe  
booke in the chylde of Adam and also of Noe . and how Noe  
deuyded the Worlde in . iij . parties to his . iij . sonnes . Also  
ther be shewyd the . ix . colours in armys figured by the . ix .  
ordres of aungelis . and it is shewyd by the forsayd colours  
Wyth ten Worthye and Wyth ten Royall . and of vngaliteis Wi;  
che ten noble and Wyth ten excellent . And ther ben here the ver  
tues of chivalry and many other notable and famous thyng  
gys to the pleasure of noble personys shall be shewyd as the bes  
tys folowynge Wittenesses Who so euer likyth to se thaim and  
rede thaim Wyth here to longe now to rehers . And after  
these notable thyngs aforesayd folowyth the Blasynge of all  
maner armys in latyn french and English .

### **I**ncipit Liber armorum .

**B**eyng in Worthenes armes for to here by the Royall  
blode in ordynance all nobill and gentyl men from the  
higest degre to the lastest i this booke shall be shewed . and to  
desceuer Gentilnes from vngentilnes . **I**n so moche that  
all gentilnes cummys of god of heuyn . at heuyn 3 Wyth begyn  
Where here . p . ordres of aungelis and now stonde to . ix . in co  
ole armuris of knaughte encoloured full hys Wyth precious sto  
nes . Where lucifer Wyth mylionys of aungelis obte of heuyn felt  
wnto hys and odyr places and ben holdyn ther in bondage . and  
all Where created in heuyn of gentill nature . A bonde man or a  
churle Wyth say all We be cummyng of adam . So lucifer Wyth his  
cumpany may say all We be cummyng of heuyn . **A**d Adam the

beginnyng of man kynde Was as a stokke onsprayde and on;  
floreshed . and in the braunches is knollegge Wiche is rotun  
and Wiche is grene .

**H**ow Gentilmen shall be knowyn from churlis  
a how they first began . And how Noe deuydyd  
the world in . iii . partit to his iii sonnys .

**N**ow for to deuyde gentilmen from churlis in haast it shall be  
preued . Ther Was neuer gentilman nor churle orderyd by kyn  
de but he had fadde and modre . Adam and Eue had nother fa;  
dre nor modre . and in the sonnys of Adam and Eue Was foun  
de both gentilman and churle . By the sonnys of Adam and  
Eue Seth Abell and Cayn deuyded Was the royalt blode fro  
the vngentill . A brother to slep his brother getay to the lall  
Wher myght be more vngentilnes . By that did Cayn become  
a churle and all his offsprynge after hym by the cursyng of god  
and his owne fadde adam **A**nd Seth Was made a gen  
tilman thowth his fadres and moderis blissyng . And of the  
offsprynge of Seth Noe come a gentilman by kynde

**N**oe had . iij . sonnys begetyn by kynde . by the modre . ii .  
Were named Cham and Sem . and by the fadde the thirde Was  
nampd Jafeth . Wit in theys . iij . sonnys gentilnes and vn;  
gentilnes Was founde **I**n cham vngentilnes Was founde  
to his owne fadde doon to disaue his preuytes and laugh  
his fadde to scorne **J**afeth Was the yongist and repreued  
his brodre . Than like a gentilman take mynde of Cham . for  
his vngentilnes he Was become a churle : and had the cursyng  
of god and his fadde Noe . And Whan Noe awoke he sayde  
to Cham his sonne : knowyst nott thow how hit become of

Cayn Adam soon: and of his churlysh blode. All the Worlde  
 is drownde saue Be. viij. And now of the to begynne ungen-  
 tilnes and a cause to destoye vs all: vpon the hit shall be &  
 so I pray to god that it shall fall. Now to the I geue my  
 curse Wycked karyse for eu. and I geue to the: the north parte  
 of the Worlde to draue thyn habitation for the: shall it be.  
 Where sorow and care alwe and myschef as a churle thow  
 shalt haue. in the thirde parte of the Worlde Which shall be calde  
 Europe that is to say the contre of churlys.

**C**aseth eu her my sonne thow shalt haue my blissing  
 were i steed of Seth Adam son I make the a gentelman to the We-  
 ste parte of the Worlde. and to the occident ende: Where as Welth  
 and grace shall be. the: thyn habitation shall be. to take that othe-  
 therde parte of the Worlde Which shall be calde asia that is to say  
 the contre of gentelman.

**A**nd Sem my son also a gentelman I the make to multipli-  
 abellis blode that so Wyckedli Was slayn. the oriente thow shal  
 take that othe- therde parte of the Worlde Which shall be calde affri-  
 ca. that is to say the contre of tempurnes.

**O**f the ofspryng of the gentelman Iaseth come Abraham  
 Moyses Aton and the profettes. and also the kynge of p<sup>r</sup> right  
 lyne of mary. of Whom that gentelman Ihesus Was borne very  
 god and man: after his manhode kynge of the londe of Jude &  
 of Iues gentelman by is modre mary prynce of Cote armure.

**H**ow longe Cote armures wer begunne afore  
 thyn carnacion of oure lorde Ihesu cryst.

**I**aseth made first Garget and the: in he made a ball in token

of all the Worlde . and afterwarde . iij<sup>m</sup> . yere and . xxiij . before  
the incarnation of Criste : Cote armure Was made . and figured  
at the sege of troye Where in gestys troianorum it tellith that  
the first begynnyng of the labbe of armys Was . the Wiche Was  
effugured and begunne before any labbe in the Worlde . butt the  
labbe of nature . and before the . p . comendementis of god

**A**nd thys labbe of armys Was groundid vpon the . ix . or  
xix . of angelis in heuen encloyned With . ix . dyueris precious  
stonys of colours and of veray dyueris . also of them as fi  
gured the . ix . colours in armys . as in noblme to begynne the  
first stone is called Topasion

### **Primus lapis**

**T**he first stone is calde Topasion signyfing  
golde in armys .

**T**his stone Topasion is a femy stone . and golde it is cal  
de in armys . The vertue ther of is : that the gentelman the Wi  
che thys stone in his cote armure berith a fure messangere in his  
kyngs batyll shall be . The Wiche stone is refused in the angelis  
croune that Was a true massanger and a fure in his kyngs ba  
tyll of heuen When they faught With Lucifer

### **Secundus lapis**

**T**he secunde stone is cald Smaragdus a graue  
ly stone signyfing vert in armys

**T**he secunde stone is cald Smaragdus a grauell stone . &  
wert it is calde in armys . The vertu ther of is : that the gentl  
man the Wiche in his cote armure it berith kene and hardy in his

kyng) batell) shall be . the Wyche stone is reserued in thar chancel  
les crowne that Was bene and hardy in his kyngis bataille of he;  
uen Whan they faught With lucifer

### **T**ercius lapis

**A**nd this stone is calde brusk colore i armys

**T**he thirde ston) is calde an Ametise a duskeeli ston) brusk  
hit is calde in armys . The vertu thez of is : that he the Wyche be;  
rith in his Cotearmur that stone . fortunable of victori i his ki  
ges batayll) shall be . the Wyche stone is reserued to the victualys  
crowne that Was fortunable and victoriows in his kyng) batall  
of heuen Whan they faught With Lucifer

### **Q**uartus lapis

**A**nd this stone is calde plūby color i armys

**T**he .iii. stone is calde a Margarete a cloudy stone glum;  
by hit is calde in armys . The vertue thez of is . What gentilma  
that i his Cotearmure that stone berith grete goūnabnce of chi;  
ualrie in his kyngys batayll) he shall haue . the Wyche stone is ref  
ued in the potestatis crowne that Was cheualrie of goūnauce  
in his kyngys batayll) of heuen Whan they faught With Lucifer

### **Q**uintus lapis

**A** loys is calde sinamer or sanguine i armys

**T**he .v. ston) is calde a Loys . a sanguine stone or sinamer  
hit is calde in armys . The vertue thez of is : the gentilman thatt  
in his Cotearmure this stone berith myghtifull of poler in his  
kyngys batayll) shall be . the Wyche stone Was reserued in domina

cionys cowlne that Was myght full of polere in his kynngys ba;  
talt of hyrn When they faught With Lucifer

### Sextus lapis

**A**nd thys stone is calde gowlys in armys

**T**he .vi. stone is calde a Ruby a redy stone . gowlys  
it is calde in armys . the vertue therof is . the gentylman that i  
his Cotearmure that stone berith hote and full of corage in his  
kynngys bataylt shall be . the Wich stone is reserued in the princi  
pals cowlne that Was hote brinyng as fire in his kynngys ba;  
talt of hyrn When they faught With Lucifer

### Septim9 lapis

**A** blue stone it is & it is cold asure i armys

**T**he .vij. stone is calde a Saphyre a blew stone (Asure hit  
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . the gentylman that in  
his Cotearmure berith that stone : Wyse and vertues in his Bez  
kynng in his kynng bataylt shall be . the Wich is reserued to strong  
cowlne that Was Wyse and vertues in his kynngys bataylt of hy  
rn When they faught With Lucifer

### Octau9 lapis

**T**his stone is blake and it is called Sabull

**T**he .viij. ston is a Dyamond a blake stone . Sable it  
is calde in armys . The vertue therof is . What gentylman that i  
his Cotearmure thatt stone berith : durabull & consoynt in his  
kynngys bataylt he shall be . The Wich stone Was reserued i the  
cheubyns cowlne that Was durable & consoynt in his kynngys  
bataylt of hyrn . When they faught With Lucifer

**C** 179 lapis  
**A** shynng Roſe and is calde Siluer i armys

**T** he . ix . stone is calde Carbuncle a shynng stone . Silu hit is calde in armys . The vertue therof is : What gentelman y<sup>e</sup> m his Cotearmure this stone bereth . full doughti glorious & shynng in his hyngys bataylt he shall be The Rich stone Was reserued in the Serophyns cowne : that Was full doughti glorioſ & shynig i his kigg bataylt of hygn Whan tha saught B<sup>e</sup> Lucifer

**O**f the diuſe coloureil for the feld of cotearmu  
ril . v . bene worthy and .iiii. bene Royall

**T** Her be .ix. diuſe colours for the felds of Cotearmurs v  
Worthy & .iii. Royall . The v. Worthy be theys : Gol  
de Verte Graſſe Plumby & Synam . And the .iii. Royall  
be theys : Goblis Asure Sable & Siluer . Got now aft bla  
ſens of armys ther be tot .vi. colours of y<sup>e</sup> Rich .ij. be metall &  
iii. colours . Golde & Silu for metall . Vert Goulis Asure &  
Sablut for colours . & theys be vsid and no moo .

**O**f nine preci<sup>9</sup> stonis . v. be noble & .iiii. of dig

**T** Her be .ix. precious stonys . v . noble & .iii. of dignite  
The .v. noble stonys be theys Topasion Smaragmat Alma ;  
like Margaret & Aloys . The .iii. of dignite be theys Rubi  
Saphyr Diamond and Carbuncull

**O**f thorderil of angelis . v. be ierarch & .iiii. tro

**T** Her be .ix. ordys of angelis . v . Jerarchie . & .iii. Troly

The .x. Ierarchie be theys : Angelis Archangelis virtues  
Potestates & dominacions The .iii. Eweli be theys Princi-  
pals & Ewyl Cherubyn and Seraphyn .

**A**v. of the dignite of regalite be noble x.iiii. &c

**T**he .x. dignites of Regalite .x. noble and .iii. ex-  
cellent The .x. noble be theys Gentilman Squier knyght Ba-  
ron and Lord . And .iii. excellent be theys Erle Mark Du-  
ke and Prince

### Nyne vertues of preci9 stonys

Nyne vertues of preci9 stonys ben ther .x. generall and  
iii. speciall The .x. genall ben theys A sure messenger Rene  
& hardy fortunat of victori Cheualry of gouernaunce & myghti  
fult of power The .iii. speciall be theis : hote of courage Wyse &  
redy & vertues in Werkyng Durable & vnsaynt fult doughti &  
glorios shynyng .

### **T**he .iiii. vertues of cheualry

**F**oure vertues of cheualry ben ther : The first is iuste in  
his bestis . clemes of his pson . peti to haue of the poore . to be  
gracious to his pson . to be reuerent and faythfult to his god  
The secunde is that he be Wyse i his bataill . prudent i his fightig  
knowyng & haupng mynde i his Wittis . The .iiij. is y<sup>e</sup> he be nott  
slow i his Weris loke be fore y<sup>e</sup> his quill be true thanke god e-  
uer of his victory & for to haue mesure i his sustynace . The .iii  
is to be strong & stedfast i his gouernaunce . to hope to haue y<sup>e</sup> victory



And wode not frome the feld and not to shame his coeazure . Also that he be not to boistfull of his manhod Take that he be curtes lonly and gentill and With olde rebaldry in his langage .

**H**ere shall be shewed the .ix. artikelis of gentilnes . v of them ar amorous and iiii souerayn

**T**her be .ix. artycles of gentilnes . and of theym .v. bene amorous . and .iiij. soueren . The .v. amorous gentilneses ben thes Lordeli of colntenadunce Treteable in langage Wyse in his answere Perfite in gouernadunce . and There; full to faythfulnes . The .iiij. souerayn gentilneses ben theis Selbe othes in sweryng . Hopom to goddis byddyng . Kno; dyng his olne birthe in bezyng . and to drede his souerayn to offende .

**T**her be ix. vices contrary to gentilmen

**T**her ben .ix. vices contrari to gentilmen of the Wiche .v. ben indetermynable and .iiij. determynable The .v. indetermynable ben theys : oon to be full of slooth in his Werres . an othe; to be full of boost in his manhode . the thrid to be full of colbard; nes to is enemy . the fourth to be full of lechri in his body . & the fifthe to be full of drynkynge & dronckunli . Ther be .iiij. determynable : on is to reuoke is olne chalange . an othe; to slep his prafoner With his olne handis . the thrid to foyde from his foue; raygnes baner in the feld . and the fifthe to tell his soueraygne fals talys

**T**her be .ix. iestimable reioyngis in armys

**T**he .ix. iestimable reioyngis of armys ben thes

**F**irst is a gentelman to be made a knyght in the feld at battail

**T**he secunde is lyuelode of hym to resapue after manhode  
**T**he .ij. is chualy to do by fore his soueren **T**he .iii.  
 is ambassatt to be put in his honde for Wisdom . **T**he .iij. is  
 prouises of knyghthode done be fore alioundis i honor of renolune.  
**T**he .iij. be calde in armpes the .iij. autentike Now folowith  
 the .iii. endyng stremptallis personall **T**he first is a po  
 re knyght to be married to the blode Royalt **T**he secunde is  
 to haue thanke of his souereyn perpetuall . **T**he .ij. is to  
 kepe his Cote armure conshampd m trauell **T**he .iii. is  
 to kepe all popntis of is knyghthod as gescys twanorum de;  
 clarithy .

**K**now ye that theis ii. orderis wer. first wedlok  
 & then knyghthode. and knyghthode was made be  
 fore Cote armure was ordened .

**T**he Was non order bot .ij. Wedloke first and knyghthod  
 after . **A** knyght Was made before ony cote armure . and O  
 lybion Was the first knyght that euer Was . **A**steriali his fader  
 come bi the right lyne of that gentelman Jafeth and saw the pe  
 ple multiplie & had no gouernez **A**nd the cursed peple of Sem  
 Bered a peny them **O**libion Was the stryngest and the manful  
 lest man in his tyme **A**nd the peple cried on **O**libion to be thyr  
 maister and theyr gounez **A** thousand men Ber than multipli  
 ed of Jafethis lyne . **A**steriaff made to his son a garlande a  
 bolde his hode of .ij. diueris precioufe stonys in tokenyng of  
 chualti to be a gounez of a .M. men . & conto thys same day p  
 kny haue his name i late p is as moch to sai p gounez . iij . me

Olibion knelyd to Asterpall his fader and askyd his blis :  
 syng . Asterpall toke Olibions siberde that Was Jafethis  
 fawldchon that Tubalt made before the floode : and smote flat  
 lpng . w . tymys wypon the ryght shuldre of Olibion in toke :  
 wyng of the w . wertyngs of the forsayde precious stonys and  
 gaue him his blissing With a charge to kepe the w . wertyngs  
 of charge now folowng as ye shall here .

**T**heis be the charges or artikelis that every  
 knyght shulde kepe by the dignyte of his order &  
 they be ix . v . tempall and iiii goostly

**T**he be . w . temperatit wertyngs & . iiii . goostly wertyngs of charite  
 the . w . tempall wertyngs be theys . he shall not turne his backe  
 to his enemy for to flee . The . ii . is that he shall truly holde  
 his promysse to his frende : and also to his foe . The . iii . is  
 he shall be free of mete and drinke to all his meny a bouthe him  
 The . iiii . is he shall wpholde maydonys ryght . The . v . is  
 that he shall holde wphodys ryght . Theys be the . iiii . wertyngs  
 of charite goostly . The first is : he shall honoure his fa :  
 der and his moder . The . ii . is he shall do noon harme to the  
 poore . The . iii . is he shall be mercifull . The . iiii . is he shall  
 holde With the sacrifice of the grete god of heuyn . And than  
 Asterpall did make to Olibion a targe of Olyfe tree With  
 ij . corneris . ii . a bouen is face and oon wylone to the grolond  
 Barde . m tokenyng that thys Olibion Was the chur of all

the blode of the .iij. sonnes of Noe By the Olif tree he vnder  
 stode vieterp for to Bye By the poynt of his target to the gro;  
 vnder the cursed brother Cham By the corner of his target a  
 bouen fithereft that other brother Sem . That other corner  
 next to hym selfe betokenyth that gentelman Jafeth the blis  
 sed brother of Whome god and man come by right lyne

**T**he maner of knyghthodis ben .ii. oon with  
 the Swerde An other with the Bath

**T**her be .ij. maner of knyghthodes oon With the swerde and  
 an other With the bath The bath is the Worthest by cause of  
 iij . Royalties . Don is Whan an onaged pryncer is made kn  
 yght or be crowned kyng The secunde is Whan a kyng or an  
 Emperoure is crowned . The thyrde is Whan a quene or an  
 Emperis is crowned . The iij . is Whan a kyng or an Em  
 peroure cum to speke With an other of dyuerse lordys

**N**yne maner of gentylmen ther bene

**T**her is a Gentylman of Muncetre and of blode

**A**nd ther is a Gentylman of bloode

**T**her is a Gentylman of Cōtearmur : and theos be .iij  
 Don of the kyngys bage . An other of a lordeship . And  
 the therde is of the kyllyng of a Saryson

**A**nd ther is a gentylman contrapatt

**A**nd ther is a gentylman Mocrasfet

**A**nd ther is a gentylman Spirituall

**T**her is also a gentylman spirituall and temperall . and  
 all thys ben more playnly declared in thys booke

## **T** Gentilmen be calde. iiii. maner of wyse one of auncetreis and iii of Cotarmure

**T**her be .iii. diuerse maner of gentilmen . Don his a gentyl;  
man of auncetreys : With muste nedis be a gentilman of blode.  
Ther be .iiij. gentilmen of Cotarmure and not of blode Don  
is a gentylman of Cotarmure of the gynges bagge . that is to  
say his deuce by an heralld 3gouen . An other gentilman of  
Cotarmure is and not of blode a kyng geuyng a lordshipp to a  
yoman vnder his seall of potent to hym and to his eyres for e  
uer more he may bete a Cotarmure of the same lordshipp .  
The thirde his a yoman cristenyd yif he kist a gentylman forsyn  
he may bete the forsyns Cotarmure and noo forsyn a forsynis  
cotarmure nethir cristenys cotarmure bi feghtyng in noo wyse  
Nit sum men say that a cristen man ouercomyng a cristen man  
feghtyng in the list shall bete the cotarmure of him that is ouer  
comyn . Or if a souereyn kyng make of a yoman a knyght that  
same knyght is a gentylman of blode by the royalte of the kyng  
and of knyghthood

## **A** gentylman spirituall

**T**her is a gentylman a churle sone a preste to be made and  
that is a spirituall gentylman to god and not of blode . But  
if a gentylmannys sone be made preste he is a gentilman both spi  
rituall and temperall . Criste Was a gentilman of his moder be;  
alue and bare cotarmure of auncetreis . The .iiij. Euangelist  
berith Wittenese of Cristis Warkys in the gospell With all thap;  
postilles . Ther were 3edyes and of gentylmen come by the right  
lyne of that Worthy queene Judas machabeus bot that by suc  
cession of tyme the kynrede fell to puerly . after the destrucion

of Judas Machabeus and then they fell to labours & Warre al;  
de no gentilmen. and the .iii. doctours of holi church Seynt Je;  
rom Ambrose Augustyn and Gregori War gentilmen of blood  
and of cotarmures

**A**lso the diuisionys of cotarmuris be .ix. that  
is to witt .v. perfyte and .iiii. vnperfyte

**T**her be .ix. dyuisionis of cotarmures .v. perfite & .iiii.  
vnperfite. The .v. perfite be theys Termynall Colla  
terall Abstrakte Sypall and Bastard.

### **A** Diferens Enbordynge

**T**ermynall is calde in armys all the bretheren of right ly;  
ne lether by fadre or by modre may bere the right letris cotarmu;  
ris With a differens calde Enbordynge

### **A** Diferens Jemelis

**C**ollaterall is calde in armys the sonnys of the bretheren  
of the right leyre beynge the cotarmuris of theyr faders With a  
differens Jemelis

### **A** Diferens molet

**S**ypall in armys is calde the thirde degre by the right ly;  
ne from the right leyre by line male. thay may bere there fa;  
ders cote armure With a differens molet

### **A** Diferens countertreuis

**T**he bastarde of sypall shall bere his faders cotarmure co;  
unturtreuis. that is to say What so euer he bereth in his felde he  
shall bere in the colours dyuerse and no more

## How ther be .iiii. cotarmurs imperfite and be boyn wth owte diferans

**T**her be .iii. cotarmurs imperfite : and be borne wth othe differance . The first cotarmur is if a lordshipp a fore sayde be gouden vnder patent bi the kyng . and if he die wth oute heyr his cotarmur is 3<sup>don</sup> .

**T**he secunde is the cotarmur of the kynges gyfte yf he dye wth othe heyr his cotarmur is done . and yf theys .ij. cotarmurs haue wsshels forth : the fith degre of cheam bringe lyne by male be gentylmen of bloode by laboure of armes

**T**he threde cotarmur of the Saracen yf the cristyn man dye wth othe wsshels his cotarmur is done . and if he had wsshels forth vnto the fith degre from him by right lyne of wsshels male he is a gentylman of bloode

**T**he salbrith cotarmur of the chese bloode yf he dye wth othe ony wsshels the hole cotarmur is lost than it fallith to be a cotarmur of thymperfite bringe wth a differans

**A**ll the bastardis of all cotarmurs shall haue a fesse Suall hit a baston of oon of the .iii. dignities of colouris . excepte the bastards of the fipiales and the bastards of the brethryne of the cheue bloode Where theritance is departed to euery brother e like moche theys bastardis shall adde more bagge to his armes or take a Bag a bagge of armes

## Note here well who shall gyue cotarmures

**T**her shall none of the .ix. orduris of regallite but all onli the souerayne kyng geue cotarmur . for that is to hym impo

perid bi salbe of armys . And yit the kyng shall nott make a knyght Withoute a cootarmure by fore .

**E**uē knyght chescayn i the felde mai make a cootarmur knight

**I**n how many places a knyght may be made

**A** Knyght is made in .v. dyuerse placis In musturing in londe of Beris . In Sembleng vnder baneris . In listys of the bath And at the sepulchur

**C**alled cotarmure is on the moderis parte

**C**alled cotarmure is calde the coote of a gentylboman buyng byelode Weddyd to a man buyng noo cotarmure . his sone may Were his cotarmur With a difference of armys during his liue by the curtesy of lab of armys . and his sone shall none be but so be that the gentylboman be hys or nept of blode to that cotarmure . Or ellis byng his byrth of the blode Royalt and than shall his hys be his cotarmure

**H**ow Gentyll men be made of Gromis that be nott of cotarmure nether blode and they be cald vntriall and apocrifate as hit shewith folowng

**T**her be .ij. dyuerse Gentyllmen made of gromys : that be nott gentylmen of cotarmure nother of blode . One is calde in armys a gentylman vntriall that is to say made vpon among relygious men as priors Abbottis or Byschoppis . That other is called in armys a gentill man apocrifate that is to say ma



to ppe and gouyn to him the name and the lyuery of a gentyl;  
man .

**I**n armys be vi. differences that is to say ii.  
for excellent and iii. for nobullys

Ther be .vi. Differences in armys . ii : for the excellent .  
and . iii . for the nobles . Label and Emborduryng for lordis .  
Trembles Molettys Floore wyce and Quynsfoyles for the  
nobles .

**I**n blasynge of armys be .ix. quadratis that is  
to say .v. quadrate finiall and iii. Royall

**I**n blasynge of armys ther be .ix. quadratis for to con;  
sider .v. quadrate finiall and .iii. Royall . If ye qua  
drate finiall be theys . Berea . Berandi . Fattly . Berailly . and  
Endently .

**B**erea is called in armys When cotarmure is .ix. qua;  
drate of diverse colours .

**B**erandi is called in armys When the cotarmure is of .ix .

diverse colours : is a fustarget With in the cotarmure of Whatt  
coloure that hit be of

**F**attly is called in armys When the cotarmure is counterseid

**B**erailly is called in armys When the cotarmure is powdered  
Bot a blaisor shall not say he berailly Ermen . Suler powdered  
With Ermen Bot he shall say he berailly Ermen or ellis in some  
armys he muste say dem Ermen : Wich is to say Whitt Ermen

**I**n so moche that i the fifthe quadrate fimalt hit is determyned  
of the tokenys of armys . or 3 proce to hit : is shewed What  
maner of tokeny a gentylt man may Bearer .

**A** gentelman mai not Bearer tokenys of armys bot of steinig  
colours . that is to say his coatarmure pynt or ellis 3 geratt  
With precious stones

**G**erattyng howe . w . bagges of coatarmures . First With crof  
lettis . and of theym ther be . iij . dyuerse . and the bene theys  
Cros fygly . Cros paty Cros croflettis . and Cros floxy

**A** The secunde baage is flore delyce .

**A** The threde baage is roflettys

**A** The folbrich baage is pyrmawse .

**A** The fifthe baage is quynfolis .

**A** The septhe baage is diaclyce

**A** The seuemith baage is chapelettys

**A** The . viij . baage is Molettys .

**A** And the . ix . baage is Cressauntis that is to say halfe the  
moone . theys be polidrygis of coatarmures .

**A** The fifthe quadrate is calde Endently of . iij . diuse Bens  
that is to say betally lenthally and fpyelly .

**A** Bebally is calde i armys When a coatarmure is calde En  
dentys of . ij . dyuerse colours in the length of the coatarmure

**A** Lenthally is calde in armys When p<sup>r</sup> coatarmure is Endentid  
With . ij . dyuerse colours in the berde of the coatarmure

**A** Fpyelly is called in armys . iij . manere Weyes Ffesy bagge  
fesy target and fesy generall .

**H**esp bagge is Whan tokenys of armys be dissciuered from the  
cheef of the costarmure to the right splayez in the felde

**A** fresp target is Whan a fegion or an engislet is made in the  
myddull of the costarmure .

**A** fresp generall is calde in armys Whan the costarmure is  
Endentid With . ii . dyuerse colours from the laste poynt of the  
costarmure to the splayez

**T**he chefe is calde in armys the myddys of the costarmure of  
the right syde .

**Q**uadrat is calde in armys Whan the felde is set With sum  
tokyn of armys .

**A** quadrant-finall is called in armys Whan the felde is  
discoloured With tokenis of armys haupng no best in the felde .

**A** Quadrant Royall is calde Whan the felde occuppeth y<sup>e</sup>  
token of a best or ony othez tokyn set With in the costarmure to  
the nombere of fiue .

**A** The first quadrant is oon tokyn of armys allonli sett  
and? Whatt after his byrthe he breyth .

**A** The secunde quadrant Royall is beynng in his costarmur  
ij . thyngz calde the tokenys of armys . that is to say . ij . flowe  
cedes . ij . fplcys . ij . rosis . ij . chappettes . ij . lebardis . ij . ly  
onys . and so the . iij . quadrat Royall is to be a best (Roun  
pande : betaly . lentally . and fessely .

**H**ere shall be shewed what Cootarmuris restyr  
al ben and weer the blaser shall begyn to blase .

**T**hre cootarmuris be ther called restypatt in armys .  
E on is whan a cootarmure is barri of dyuerse coloubres  
to the poynt . and what coloure the poynt be of . the poynt is the  
felde . Ther the blaser shall begynne .

**T**he secunde cootarmure restriatt is calde i armys whan  
a cootarmure is paly of dyuerse colouris to the poynt . & what  
pale medyllt in the poynt y<sup>e</sup> coloure is the felde The blaser shall  
blase from that coloure to the next coloure pale .

**T**he threde cootarmure restriatt is calde in armys whan a  
cootarmure is sentry of dyuerse coloubres to the poynt and what  
settre myddylt in the poynt y<sup>e</sup> coloure is the felde . The blaser  
shall blase from y<sup>e</sup> coloure to the next coloure of the lefte side  
of the cootarmure and blase the coloure sentry .

**M**erke what sentre fixal Mangis Gorgis & o:  
ther diuerse here now . folowynge be calde i armys

**A** Sentre in armys is called stakar of tentis .

**A** fixiatt be called in armys mylner pykes .

**A** Mangys be called in armys a fleue .

**A** Gorgys be called in armys Water bulgees .

**A** Elynellis be calde in armys . iij . quadrantis truncholis .

**A** Oglys be calde in armys gonestonys .

**A** Corilettis be calde in armys wastett .

**A** Diaclys be called in armys scopprellys .

**A** Myris be calde in armys merobris or glasses .

**A** Feons be calde in armys brode arow hodyes .

**A** Cronkys be calde in armys any bestys hede or neck Thyt chagikli a sonder .

**A** Demy is calde in armys halfe a best in the felde .

**A** Countretreuis is calde in armys Whan halfe the best is of oon colour and that other halfe of an other colour

**A** Ny cotarmure that berith a crosse to the poynt : the poynt is the felde . as Seynt George berith gollis folwe anglettis of Siluer . bot apens this rule sum blasemis of armys repungne as hit is shewed in the toke folowyng .

**A** This .iij. termys . of : and . With shall not be refused in armys bot onys any of thaym

### **A** Ther be diuerse berynngys of feeldys

Dyuerse berynngis of feeldis thz be **A** Don is berynng hole felde . hit is cleppd in armys clauz

**A** The seclde is berig too feldis . hit is calde i armys Coucli

**A** The threde is berynng too feldis m . iij . quarters : hit is calde in armys quazily

### **A** Ther bene . iij . cote armurys grypty

Thre cotarmuris grypty thz bene in armys . Don is called cheky that is Whan the felde is chekerd With diuise colouris

**A** The seande is calde Wynde that is to say Whan the felde is made like Balles of oon colour or of diuerse colouris

**T**he charge is alde better than the feld is made like go  
boletys of dyuerse colours .

**I**n arms be ii. pynponys . also it shewys war  
clawry counterly and quarterly bene with other

**T**her be in arms alde . ii . pynponys . Don is when the  
feld his a saltre . Seynt andrewys crosse may be claur co;  
unterly quarterly . Claur is called playn of oon colour .  
Counterly is when colours quarterly be . ii . colours set  
in . ii . quarters

**T**he secunde pynpon is called cheffrounce that is a couple  
of spais . and that may be claur counterly quarterly geter  
and byally .

**G**eter is when . ii . cheffrounce be to gedur or moo .

**B**yally is called when a barre is be thene . ii . cheffrounce

**H**ere endeth the mooste speciall chynarys of the boke of the  
lynage of Coote armutis and holl gentylmen shalt be know;  
yn from vngentylmen . and now here folowng begynneth the  
boke of blasynge of all man arms : i latyn french & Englysh

**E**pplicat prima pars.

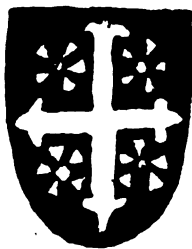




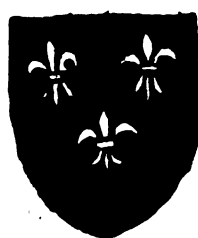


## Here begynneth the blasynge of armys

**I** have shewyd to yow in thys booke a foote holl gentilmē  
 began. and how the laud of armys was first ordant. and  
 how moni colobris shal be in costarmuris. and the difference of  
 costarmuris with mony other thynggis that here neede not to  
 be rehearsed. Now I intende to procede of signys in armys and  
 of the blasynge of all armys. Not for to rehearse all the signys  
 that be borne in armys as Pecok Wyre Beare Dragon Lyon &  
 Dolphin and flobris and leups it was to longe a taryng.  
 nez I can not do hit: ther be so mony. Not here shall shortly be  
 shewyd to blase all armys if ye entende diligentli to poure re-  
 lys. And be cause the cros is the moost Worthi signe among al  
 signys in armys: at the cros I will begynne. in the which thys  
 nobill and myghti prynce kynge Arthur hadde grete trust so  
 that he lefte his armys that he bare of. iij. Dragonys. and ou-  
 that an other shelde of. iij. crolonys. and toke to his armys  
 a crosse of Siluer in a feelde of verte and on the right side an  
 ymage of oure blessed lady with hir sone in hir arme. and w<sup>e</sup>  
 that signe of the cros he dyd mony maruelis after. as hit is  
 writyn in the bookis of cronycles of his dedys Also I haue red  
 thys signe of the cros to be sende from god to that blessed man  
 Marci as Vincencius sayth. in speculo historiali. of the mar-  
 uellis deith of Julian thapostite Emproure. li°. xxi°. he saythe  
 the angele brought on to the foresayd Marci all  
 armure necessari with a shelde of asure and a  
 cros flur with. iij. roses of golde. as here in this  
 And I fonde neuer that euer any armys was  
 sende from heuyn but in thys was the spgne of  
 the cros. Exceptid in tharmys of the kynge of fr:  
 auncer the which armys certanli was sende bi an alyngett from he-  
 uyn that is to say. in flobris in maner of Sberdis in a felde



of asure . as hit shewis here . the Wich certan ar  
mys Ware geupn to the forsayd kyng of fraunce  
in spgne of euerlastyng trowbult and that he  
and his successores att Way With batall and fwe  
reddys shulde be punysshid .



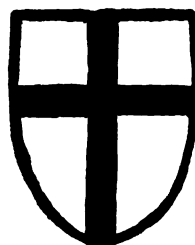
## **I** aske here moo questionis of the crossis signe

**N**ow I turne agayne to the signe of the cros and aske a  
question : how mony crossis be borne in armys . to the Wich quest  
tion vnder a certan noblumbur I dare not answer . for crossis  
innumerabull ar borne now dayli . but decendyng to eueri cros  
the Wich a fore tyme I haue seen as fer as I can I entende to  
describ . among the Wich first the playn cros shal be describ of  
the Wich cros moo doctis be made then of mony odyr crossies .  
for as moch as Wyse men in blasymg of armys holde for a we  
ri rule that ye moost begynne to blafe at the lowyst wynt of the  
sheld . if the wynt be of on coloure . and so that coloure that  
is in the wynt of the sheld is the felde of the armys

**B**ut in that rule to remeue a way att doctis ye most mer  
ke dyligently : that . that rule is true With a lityll addicion . y<sup>e</sup>  
is to Witte that in armys to be blafed it is att Way to begynne  
at the wynt of the sheld : if the wynt be of on coloure . that is  
true : if the coloure of the wynt be more copiose or gretter in thos  
armys . and then With olde doctis ye shal begyn ther . or el  
lys not . **A**nd Wex the coloures be equall ptyd othyr on len  
gth or ouerwart then euer moze ye shal begynne to blafe thos  
armys in the right side . and in that case ye shal haue no respe  
ct to the wynt .

**A**nd iff it be asked how berith Seynt george . it is to be

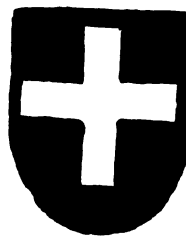
kenab that ye most say . latine . **C** portat v;  
num futum de argento cum quadam cruce plana  
de rubio . **C** Gallie . Il port dargent (ong cros  
playn de golblez . **C** Anglice . He betis a fel  
de of Siluer With a playn cros of golbles . as he  
re apperith in theys armys .



And the same maner of Wyse as all crossis haupng a playn  
cros to be blased Therefore thay er : p<sup>e</sup> say Seynt george betis  
the felde of golbles With .iii. quartetis of Siluer of Whome the  
resonis I loldue not . for by thos resonis a playn cros shuld ne  
uer be founde in armys nez Welup no differens in armys .

**C** Off an cros of an equall length on evry parte .

A playn cros is founde in armys differng from the first  
cros . and hit is of an equall length on evi parte as it ap  
perith here . and theys armys be harder then the o;  
thes to blase as hit is oppn . for thewys of thys  
cros tolchis not the hemmys or the vnter parte of p<sup>e</sup>  
shelde i no parte in Wich ye shall say that he : that  
betis thes armys . latine . sic **C** Ille portat de  
auro cum vna cruce plana aurea equalis longi  
tudinis ex omni parte **C** Gallie . Il port d'or (ong cros play  
gn d'ung longuz p tout . **C** Anglice . He betith a fure With a  
playn golden cros of equall length on evy parte . And this is  
the differans in blasng . that all thewys of thys cros arne of e  
quall length the Wich mai not be in the playn cros a fore . for the  
foote is the lengest parte . and hit be Well made . And this diffe



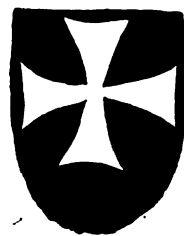
rens shall appere better in a coatarmure : then it doth in a shield  
 & so ther is an euident differens be this y<sup>e</sup>. ii. crossis aforesaid

### ¶ Off a playn cross scrupte .

**T**her is an oder cross aquall scrupte in the myddis then  
 in the myddis with oppn corneris as here not touchyng the  
 outerist parte of the sheelde in any parte ther of .

and hit is calde a cross patent . And ye shall say  
 that be the Wich beris this cross beris i this man .

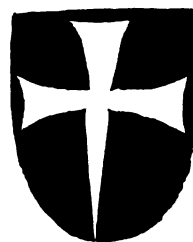
¶ latine sic . Ille portat sonam crucem argenta ;  
 tam patentem in campo nigro . ¶ Gallice . Il  
 port de sable ung cross patée dargent . ¶ Angli  
 ce sic . He berith Sable a cross paty of Siluer .



### ¶ Off a cross patent fixibyll .

**T**his cross patent is made dyuerse in the footo of the same  
 as hit apperith here . And then hit is calde a cross patée  
 fixible . for i the erth sych a cross may be ppychit .  
 in the Wich cross . iii . of the heyr partes ar oppn  
 in the corneris and bradder thyan in the myddis . &  
 his footo is disposid to pichy i the erthe . latine .

¶ Ille portat de rubio cum rona cruce fixitua  
 de albo ¶ Gallice . Il port de gullis ung cross  
 patée fiche dargent . ¶ Et anglice . He berith Gullys and  
 a cross paty fixibyll of Siluer . And knawe ye that ther be mo  
 ny crossis the Wych may be maade fixibyll as hit shall be shewd  
 here folowynge in dyuerse .



### Off a playn cros cordyd.

**A**mong odyr crossis oon is founde the which is cald a cord  
did cros as here it is shewed i this cros the which is cal  
d a corddid cros : for hit is made of cordys . the  
which testat cros I se bott late : in tharmys of a  
nobill man : the which in very deed was summe ty  
me a crafty man a Roper as he hym selfe sayd .  
And ye shall say of him that beith theys armys  
latine **A**lle portat goubles cum una cruce  
plana cordata de argento . Gallice sic . **A**l port de goullez  
& ung cros playn corde argent . Anglice sic . **A** The beith  
gullis and a cros playn cordyd of Syluer .



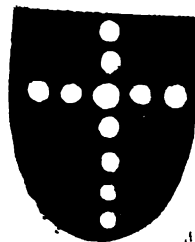
### **A** Off a cros playn pforatid .

**T**her is an odyr cros playn the which meruelusly fro the  
playn cros of Saynt george differis . as here apperith .  
And here it is to be merktyd . that thoppynyon of  
sum men : sayng is . that theis armys be chekerd  
armys . and this oppynyon is vnturly to be repre  
ntyd for armys may not be chekerd bot at the lest  
in the nombur of . iiii . and in a grettir nombur  
they may be made . as afterward shall be shew  
ed . Therfor it is to be said . latine sic . **A**lle portat un  
am crucem argentea pforatam in campo nigro . Et gallice sic .  
**A**l port de Sable ung cros argent pter . Anglice .  
**A** The beith Sable and a cros pforatid of Syluer .



## ¶ Off a besantid cros.

**O**ver theis crossis we haue an odyr cros the Wiche I saue late in tharmys of a certan Januens as here it shewis And this is calde a besant cros for it is made all of besanttis . and such a cros may be made als so ; ne with lytill carys as with besanttyes . for besanttyes and lytill carys differ not bot in coloure . for besanttis be euer of golden coloure . ne the coloure of the besant shall be expressed in blasynge of armys . for it nedis not to say a besant of golde for thez be no besantis bot of golde Therfor it is to be sayd . latine sic .



**I**lle portat unam crucem talentatam in campo rubeo . .

Gallice sic . **E**t il port de goblez ung cros besanttee .

Anglice sic . **T**he berith gobles and a cros besantid .

## ¶ Off a cros flury .

**N**ow folowith an odyr cros flury . the Wiche is so called as hit apperith here . And therfor hit is calde de flourishyng cros . for hit has flouris in eueri ende (opwarde that is to say saue the foote . thys cros flury sum tyme is borne in armys fixabull . And then it is calde in armys a cros flury fixabull . for in iij . of his endys he is flourishyng and in the foote pichabull or fixabull . Therfore it is to be sayde of him that beris hit . latine . **P**ortat unam crucem auream floridam in campo auro . Et gallice . **I**l port dafor ung cros flouetez dor . Anglice . **T**he berith a furs and a cros flury of golde .



**A** Now here shall be shewyd of a cros flurri potent i armys

**N**ow folowith a nod cros the which is called a cros flurri potent . as here it apperith . And hit is calde a cros flurri potent for he hath his endis oppyn and i p<sup>e</sup> myddys of eueri ende apperith an other thryde in the maner of a floure as it is oppynli shewyd in this cros . Therefore it shall be sayd that the be-  
re of theys armys : beis in this wyse as folowith first in latyn thus : **P**ortat unam crucem floridam potentem de auro in campo asureo . Et gallice sic .



**I**l port d'or. ung patee flourettee d'or . Anglice sic .  
**T**he beith asure with a cros potent flurri of golde .

**N**ow shall vnderstand here of a playn Wateri cros .

**N**ow ouer ye shall vnderstonde that ther is an othere playn cros the which certanly is calde a Wateri cros . and hit is calde a Wateri cros for hit is made bi the maner of Water troubled with wynde . as here hit shewys i theys armys . Therefore he the which beith theys armys beis in this wyse as it shall folow first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unam crucem planam vndosam de argento in campo rubeo .



Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goblez. ung cros plain vndee d'argent . Anglice sic . **T**he beith gobles and a playn Wateri cros of Sphuer .

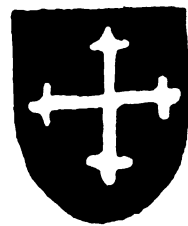
**A**lso ther is a cros that is calde muelkryt.

**I**f armys also ar founde meo crossis the Wich ar made of colobris muelkryt or indentit as here m thys cros appe; rith And it is calde a cros muelkryt for the cause that hit has .n. colobris . soon put m to an o; ther. And of him that betis theys armys ye sh; all say first m latyn thus. **P**ortat vnam crucem planam muelctam de coloribus albis et magis in campo rubro. Et gallice sic. **I**l port de goublez ung cros plain verre dargent et sable. Anglice. **T**he beath gobles and a cros of Siluer and Sable m; uelkryt.



**O**ff an other maner cros that is calde a cros croflet.

**D**e folowith an other cros the Wiches calde a cros crof sit or croflet. and hit is calde croffit for i cuz ende he is croffit as here apperis. Bot this cros is not so oft borne in armys by him selfe as other cros is neuer the lees mony tymys hit is borne i di; mpnutyys that is to say m littyll crossis croffit And then tharmys ar polidreit With littyll crof; sis cruciatit. And ye shall say thus of hym yt betis theys armys first m latyn. **I**lle portat vnam crucem cruciatam de argento in campo asotro. Et gallice sic. **I**l port asotz ung crois croftee dargent. Anglice sic. **T**he beath asure et a cros croflet of Siluer. **A**nd when such crossis ar borne and put i armys as I said





afore i dymynutyngs & w<sup>t</sup> othe any cōm nombre then thay ar  
called in french Crofletys .

¶ More ouer thez is a cros makulatit as here it folowis .

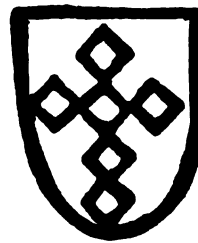
**W**het ye well wit p<sup>r</sup> thez is an othe cros the wych is cal:  
led a cros makulatit as here it apperis . And this cros  
is called a cros makulatit for he is made of mas  
culps of the wiche certan makulis ye shalt se af:  
terward in the chapitir of fustilis makult: and  
lofynge wher this mater shalt be moor playnli  
twet. And he that beris thys armpis beris as it  
is shewed here after . first in latyn thus .



¶ *Portat conam crucem makulatam de argento in campo a:  
fere . Et gallice sic .* ¶ *Il port arfor conq cros makeles  
argent . Anglice sic .* ¶ The berith asure and a cros make  
latit of Syluer .

¶ Also thez is a cros makulatit and perforatit as here .

**W**e it knowe : that thys cros makulatit sum tyme is pfo  
ratit . in the makulps as it is oppn in the persynge he e  
foloweng . And thus ye most blase hym .  
first in latyn in thys wyse . **I**lle portat conam  
crucem makulatam perforatam de auro in scuto  
argenteo . Et gallice sic . ¶ *Il port argent  
conq cros de gullez makele pfer . Anglice sic .*  
¶ The berith Syluer With a cros of golles  
makulatit pferit .



**A**lso thes is a cros that is calde muelkryt.

**I**f armys also ar founde meo crossis the With ar made of colobris muelkryt or indentit as hys m thys cros appe; rith And it is calde a cros muelkryt for the cause that hit has .n. colobris . oon put m to an o; ther. And of him that beris thes armys ye sh; all say first m latyn thus . **P**ortat vnam crucem planam muelctam de coloribus altis et m gus m campo rubro . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goubles vng cros playn verre dargent et sable . Anglice . **T**he beath goubles and a cros of Siluer and Sable m; uelkryt .



**O**ff an othez maner cros that is calde a cros croflet .

**D**e folowith an othez cros the Withes calde a cros crof sit or croflet . and hit is calde croffit for i cuz ender he is croffit as hys apperis . Bot this cros is not so oft borne m armys by him selfe as othez crof fis neuer the lees mony tymys hit is borne i di; mpnutyys that is to say m lityll crossis croffit And thes tharmys ar polidre With lityll crof; fis cruciatit . And ye shall say thus of hym y; beris thes armys first m latyn . **I**lle portat vnam crucem cruciatam de argento m campo auro . Et gallice sic . **I**l port asor vng crois croflee dargent . Anglice sic **T**he beath asur et a cros croflet of Siluer . **A**nd Whan such crossis ar borne and put i armys as I said



afore i dymynutyons & w<sup>t</sup> oðte any cōm nombre then thay ar  
called in french Crofletys .

¶ More ouer thez is a cros makulatit as here it folowis .

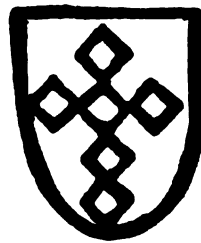
**W**yt ye Well wit p<sup>t</sup> thez is an oðer cros the wych is cal:  
led a cros makulatit as here it apperis . And this cros  
is called a cros makulatit for he is made of mas  
culps of the Wych certan makulis ye shall se af:  
terward in the chapituz of fustyllis makult: and  
lospnays Wher this matz shall be mooz playnli  
treatit. And he that beis thys armpz beis as it  
is shewed here after . first in latyn thus .



¶ *Portat conam caucem makulatam de argento in campo a:  
fereō . Et gallice sic .* ¶ *Il port arfor conq cros makeles  
argent . Anglice sic .* ¶ The beith asure and a cros make  
latit of Siluer .

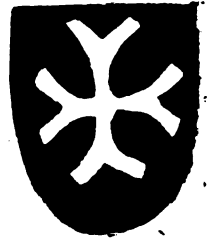
¶ Also thez is a cros makulatit and perforatit as here .

**B**e it knowe : that thys cros makulatit sum tyme is pso  
ratit . in the makulps as it is oppn in the persyng he e  
folowpng . And thus ye most blase hym .  
first in latyn in thys wyse . *Ille portat conam  
caucem makulatam perforatam de albo in scuto  
argenteo . Et gallice sic .* ¶ *Il port argent  
conq cros de gullez makele psee . Anglice sic .*  
¶ The beith Siluer With a cros of golles  
makulatit pssit .



**C** Ther is a mylneris cros as here it shall be shewed .

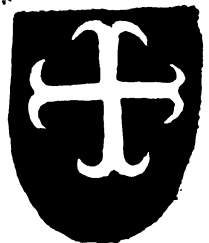
**H**ere folowis an other cros the which is calde the cros of  
a milne for hit is made to the simplitude of a ciron istur  
ment of yrne in mylne the which berith the mylne  
ston by the which instrument : that ston in his cros  
is borne equally that he deelyne not ouer myche  
on the right pte ner on the lefte parte . bot myniste  
ryng to eueri parte that : that is his equally  
and with othe frailde . And thys is geuyn to  
Juges to bere in theyr armys : and to thos that haue Juris  
diction vnder theym . That is to say as the forsayd instrument  
is directe : to the mylne ston equally and with othe gyte .  
So thos Juges ar boundyn to gyffe equally to eueri man his  
right . And it is to be sayd y<sup>e</sup> the possessor of theis army beris  
i this wyse . first i latyn thus . **P**ortat onam crucem mole  
dinarem argenteam in campo rubro . Et iam gallice .



**C** Il port goldiliez onng cros moleyne dargent . Anglice .  
**H**e berith goldiliez and a mylneris cros of Syluer .

**N**ow it shall be shewed of a cros that is turnyt a gayn .

**A**gain We haue a cros the which is calde a cros turnyt a  
gayn : and this cros is calde returnyt : for the cause y<sup>e</sup>  
thendys of this cros on eueri side ar returnyt  
again bi the maner of a Ramps borne . And  
he that beris theis armys beris i this wyse first in  
latyn thus . **P**ortat onam crucem auream iu  
sam in scuto asuro . Gallice sic . **C** Il port  
onng cros reueralee dor . Anglice sic .



**C** He beris asure with a cros reuersit of golde .

## ¶ Off a cros forkyd.

**U**nder stande ye that ther be othere men the which beere in  
 theys armys a certan forkyd cros as thys is. And hit  
 is called forkyd: for as moch as that all then-  
 dys of hit ar clouny and forkyd. Therefore hit  
 shall be sayd of thos men that beere theys armys  
 in this Wyse. primo latine. **P**ortat vnam  
 crucem furcatam de auro in campo asereo.  
 Gallice. **I**l port d'or ung cros dor.  
 Anglice. **T**he beere a fure Wyth a cros forkyd of golde.



## ¶ Off a cros engrayld or engraid.

**A**lso ther be certayn nobyll men the which beere a cros eng-  
 rayld or engrayld. as it apperis here folowynge. And  
 hit is calde a cros engrayld for hit is not pla-  
 yne in ony parte of him but engrayld also bett  
 ouer his length as ouer his breed. Neuer the-  
 lees this engraylynge is no proper langage aftir  
 the sight of thys cros: but rather an enderlynge  
 as tuth is. For it is the comune maner of spe-  
 kyng in theys armys. Therefore ye most say as I sayd a fore.  
 And ye shall say of him that beere theys armys in thys Wy-  
 se. First in latyne thus. **P**ortat vnam crucem ingradatam  
 de albo in campo rubeo. Et iam Gallice.



**I**l port de gullys ung cros ingral dargent. Anglice  
**T**he beere gullys and a cros ingraled of Syluer.

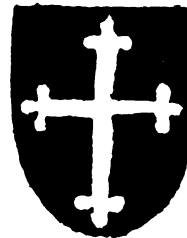
## ¶ Off a cross cutoff .

**F**ynde yet an othyr cros : the Wich is borne many tymes  
 ys i tharmpys of nobyll men . the Wich is calde a cros tell  
 cutid . And hit is calde trunkatid for hit is ma-  
 de of .ii. treys the topys cut a way . as here . Ther-  
 fore it is to be sayd that the possessor of theys ar-  
 mys beris in latine thus . ¶ *Portat onam cru-*  
*cem truncatam de argento in campo rubro .*  
*Et gallice . I l port de gullez ung cros recopee*  
*dargent . Anglice . ¶ The berich gobbles With a cros trunka-*  
*tid of Siluer .*



## ¶ Off a knotty cros.

**N**ow be ye wit after theys crosseis ther is an othyr cros the  
 Wich is calde a knotty cros : the Wich i certan is calde so  
 for hit has many ende certan knottis . as here .  
 And it is to be sayde of hym that beris theys ar-  
 mys in thys Wyse . *Primo latine . I pse por-*  
*tat onam crucem auream nodulatam i scuto a so-*  
*ro . Et gallice . ¶ I l port d'asor ung cros to-*  
*tone dor . Anglice . ¶ The beris asure With*  
*a cros knotty of golde .*



**A**nd thys cros is founde othyr while pprtye or figityue i ar-  
 mys . and? then his foote is figityue as I sayd a fore .

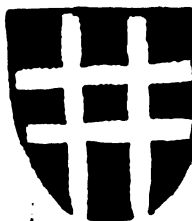
**C Off a cros fluzri knottid .**

**O**ver this cross we have a certain cross fluzri of the Bi;  
che it is spokyn a foote . the Bi che cros fluzri is founde  
knottid as here . And that is as I sayd a foote  
than knottid as founde i the endys and the angles  
of the sayd cros . And the betes of the sayd armys  
latine . **C** Portat unam crucem nodulatam flo  
ridam auream in campo de asuro . Et gallice sic  
**C** Il port d'asor ung cros floretez botone dor .  
Anglice . **C** He berith asure and a cros fluzri knottid of  
golde .



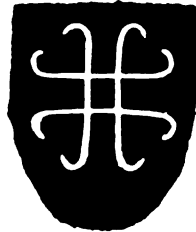
**C Off a cros dolbult ptitid .**

**A** Cross dolbult is founde in the armys of dyuerse nobull  
men the Wyche certain cros is calde a dolbult ptitid cros .  
For if it be deuyded or partid after the long way  
or the brode way yit ther a bydys on dolbult cros  
as we may se here . Wit I haue seen many no;  
bull men dolbtyng of this cros moore then of any  
cros a fore said : the which neuer the lees after long  
disputacions in thoppynion a foresayd restid and  
concludid . Therefore that beris thes armys . latine sic .  
**C** Portat unam crucem duplicatam argenteam in campo ni  
gro . Gallice sic . **C** Il port sable ung cros dolbleptie ar  
gent . Anglice sic . **C** He berith Sable and a cros dolble  
partid of Siluer .



## ¶ Off a cros double ptitid florishid

**T**his cros double ptitid is varied sum tyme . and then hit is called a cros double partitid florishid . as here .  
 Nevertheless hit is calde a cros fluzi impopuli as sum men seyen for hit sayliþ the myddys of that floure as a noon hit shall folow in the next armys . the which certan myddys by no maner of wyse in that cros double ptitid may be . as a noon it shall be shewed . Not þe that berith theis armis latine . ¶ *Portat unam crucem duplam ptitam auream in campo rubro . Gallice .* ¶ *Il port de goublez ung cros double ptie floritee dor . Anglice .* ¶ The berith gobles and a cros double ptitid fluzi of golde .



## ¶ Off a cros tripartitid florishid .

**B**ut as is shewed afore this cros is calde a cros double ptitid florishid for the sayliþ the myddys of the cros by the which the cros florishid is made pite . as here hit is oppn . the which certan myddys putt the to it shall not be called a cros double ptitid florishid . Not rather it shall be calde a cros threefold ptitid fluzi . and then it is best blased . for and it be dyuidid after the longnes or after the brodenes . all way oon parte shall a byde triptitid in the myddis of the cros as it is oppn i tharmpes afore writtyn . And therefore þe that berith theis armis . latine . ¶ *Portat unā crucē triptitā de argē° i cāpo de asuro . Gallice .* ¶ *Il port d'aser ung cros tresoyes ptie floritee d'argent . Anglice sic .* ¶ The berith of asure with a cros triptitid floure of siluer .





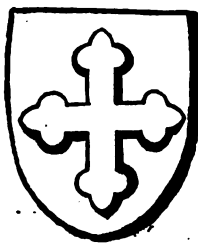
**¶ Off a mylneris cros shadowyd or ombraido .**

**A** double theer is yit of a certayn shadow of a mylnerys cros as it shewith here folowynge . And knowe ye that it is called a shadow of a cros for evermore thys shadow is made of blacke colour . of What sum ever colour the felde be of . the shadow is made of blacke . and the body of the same shadow is of y<sup>e</sup> same colour With the felde . **¶** And he that beareth thes armys . latine . *Portat onam crucem ombratam in campo quere* . **¶** Gallice sic . *Il port dor ung cros molegne ombre* . **¶** Anglice . *The beareth of golde With a mylneris cros ombraido or shadowyd* .



**¶ Off a cros floree patent ombraido .**

**A** nother sampull is sene of the ombraido of a certayn cros . and thys cros is calde a cros floree ombraido as apperith here . but truly spekyng and propurly . it is no cros : but a shadow of such a cros . and the reason is . for the body of the said shadow is of the same colour With the felde . And so the colour that is in the felde shewith by all the body of the sayd shadow . **¶** And thoo that beareth thes armys . latine . *Portat onam crucē floridam patentem ombratam in campo rubeo* . **¶** Gallice sic . *Il port de golblez ung cros patee floritee ombre* . **¶** Anglice sic . *The beareth of golde les and a cros patent floree ombraido* .



**O**ff a cross flour patent combatit and perfortid.

**N**ever the les after sum men thys shadowd cross other wyse  
 he is persid maruelusly as hit solowith here and than hit  
 is aude a cross flour patent combatit and perfo:  
 ruitid for hit accordis With the cross pcedyng  
 exceptid the passyng in the myddys of the sayd sha  
 dow. **A**nd then hit shall be sayd that he the  
 the Wyche berith this cross. latine. *Portat cona  
 cruce[m] floridam potentem combatam perfortam  
 cum rubio in campo aureo*



**E**t gallie sic Il port dor ung croys patee floride combie  
 e patee de goubles.

**E**nglice The berith of golde a cross patent flour shadowd e  
 persid With goubles.

**B**asuris moost be Ware of theis armys combatid of the  
 Wyche: money wibles be shewed a fore. **B**ot for the bla:  
 syng of theis certan armys sum ignorant men of thys craft  
 take the rule goyng a fore that is to Wyte of the colowris trans:  
 mutid as ye saw a fore **B**ot ther be certan nobles and gentil:  
 men in englonde the Wyche beere shadowys diuerse in theyr armys  
 as Lyon Antelop and other. and they that beere theys armys  
 and hit be a lyon ye shall sai in latyn **P**ortat conum leone  
 combream in campo aureo **C**allice. Il port dor et ung  
 leon combree. **E**nglice. The berith of golde and a lyon  
 combatid. **A**nd men say that suche psonys as beere theys  
 combatid armys had there pgenitoris bearyng the same not com  
 bratid bot hole **B**ot the possessions e the patrimonyes descendid  
 to other men. then the Oueys or Dynnyfmen leuyng in goode  
 hope and tustyng to haue the possessions of their pgenitoris:  
 beere theis armys combatid. att odes differens a fore said leuyng.

for When they haue that patrimony : that thai truste on . soon  
they may bee that lion or othez beest of the same coloure the W:  
che they: progenytours haue . and it is bette: to bee: thos armis  
combratit then hoolly to leeff they: progenytours armys .

**C** Witte here folowis an eodie cros hemyt or borderit as apperis

**A** Gret doubt yit remaynes a nendys blasfemie of armys i  
dyfferens be this thys cros fimbriatit or borderit . as he  
re nold apperis and the fofsayd cros combratit .

in so much that they ar mych like . and it appe;  
ris in the first sight that they be bot on . bot and  
a man beholde Well thez is a gret differens . for  
the bordir of thys cros is variet as Well fro the  
coloure of the cros as fro the coloure of the felde .



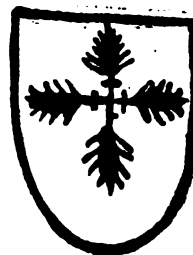
and elles is thez no doubt . Therefore it shall be sayde of hym  
that beis theys armys in thys Wyse first in latyn thus .

*Portat conam crucem nigram perforatam floridam patentem  
fimbriatam siue borduratam cum argento in campo rubeo .*

*Gallice sic .* **C** Il port de gullez ung crois flouetee patee per  
cee de sabut bordure d'argent . *Anglice sic .* **C** He beith gou  
les With a cros fluzi patent perfit of Sable borderit W: Salu .

**N**old folowis an Ermye cros as it shall be shewyd

**H** Or certan thez is an Ermye cros . & hitt  
is a meruelus cros of y<sup>e</sup> Rich thez Was a di  
sputation at london by a certan hercolde of Bre:  
tan . And it Was determynt that theys armys  
may be in non othez coloure bot as here it apperis  
And thys cros is calid an Ermye cros . and it



shall be sayd of him that beis theys armys in thes Wyse as it  
 shall folow . first in latyn thus . **C**onstat unam crucem e-  
 remmalem . Et gallice sic . **E**t port ung croys Eremmee  
 Anglice sic . **T**he beith a cros ermye And here ye moost  
 note that the coloure i theys armys shall not be expresseit for this  
 cros nez theis armis may not be made bot of theys colouris that  
 is to say allone of blacke and White the Rich as the propur colo-  
 ris of theys armys .

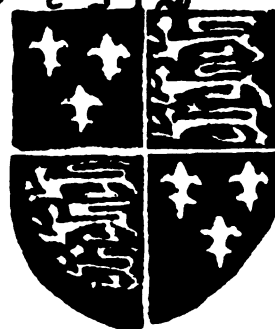
**S**ufficientli is spokyn of crossis afore . now folowis an odier  
 treteys of a puerse armys quarterit as here shall be shewyd .

**O**ff armys quarterit sum ar armis quarterit playn Sum  
 quarterit engradit . Sum quarterit irasit . Sum quat-  
 terit muechyt . Sum quarterit indentit of the Rich it shall be  
 spokyn euerich oon after other . and first of tharmys playn

**I**t shall be shewyd first of armys quarterit playn.

**T**he maner of Wyse armys may be quarterit . The first  
 maner is oppyn whan . ii . dyuerse armys ar borne quar-  
 terli as it is oppyn and playn in tharmys of the kynge of Fraun-  
 ce & of Englonde And ye shall say of hym  
 y<sup>e</sup> beis theys armys thus as folowys . first  
 i latyn . **I**lle portat arma regis Francie &  
 Anglie quarterata . Et gallice sic .

**E**t port les armes de France et dangle-  
 terre quarterees . Anglice sic . **T**he beis  
 tharmys of France & Englonde quarterli.



And it shall not be tedious to no man that Fraunce is put be fore Englonde i blasynge. bot the cause is this. for tharmys of Fraunce in armys be put afore. and he take a genall rule p<sup>r</sup> thetumeu in armys be .ii. coloures oz moe i the poynt of the shel; ce. then ye shall not begyn at the poynt to blase them. bot in the right pte oz side of thos armys. that same coloure thet founde i the right side of p<sup>r</sup> shelce is not the felde of tharmis. for it mai fortune it is not the gretist coloure i tharmys aforfayd bot les oz With othir equall. and neu the les ye shall begyn to blase thet.

Off armys quartly borne now it shall be sheldyd.

**T**he secunde maner of Wyse of beynge quarterit armys is  
 When .iii. diuise armys quartli be borne as here is sheldyd

And be that beis theys armys: beis .iii. diuise armys quartli. latine sic. Ille portat quatuor arma diuisa quartata. Gallice sic.



Il port quarter armes diuisez quarteleez.

Englice sic

**H**e beith .iii. armys diuise quartli. And then if it be askyd how theys armys shulde be blasit. The blasers most begyn i the best cornell ou the right side pcedyng to euy armys. tharmys in the right side blasit: ye most go to the odir side & then to the thirde side & aft to the last. And ye most know that theys armys reher sit afore be playn armys quarterit.

**T**her is an othir man of beynge of armys quartit When .ii. armys quartit be borne quartli. and it is borne most i armis of queneys and so bare that noble quene of Englonde quene Anna Wyse to that copast prince Kyng Richard the secunde: the Wiche bare tharmys of Englonde & of Fraunce and of thempoz of Al mayn quartli & m. p<sup>r</sup>tes. that is to say in the right side of

the shelde in the first quarter she bare tharmys of fraunce . in . flo  
 reducis of golde i a felde of asure . & i the secunde quart . in Li  
 bartis of golde i a felde of golbles . & i p<sup>e</sup> thirde quart an Egle  
 splayd B<sup>e</sup> . ii . neckis . & i che . iii . a blake Upon ramppng i a fel  
 de of Silu . and so chaungeably she bare theys armys m . p<sup>er</sup> .  
 quarters the Wich seldyn is seen in any armys .

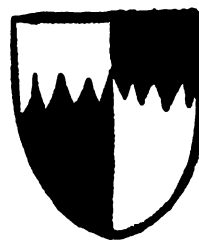
**O**ff armys quarterit and engrapht nold shall be shewyt

**N**old I shew yow p<sup>e</sup> sum time We haue armys quarterit &  
 engrapht . that is to Witt Whan eu<sup>e</sup>r armys i his quart is  
 engrapht as here apperis . & it shall be sayd of him  
 p<sup>e</sup> beis theis army thus . first i latyn **E**lle  
 portat de auro & rubio arma quarteriata & ingra;  
 data . Et gallice sic . **E**l port dor et golbles  
 quartlee engraples . Anglice sic **T**he berith  
 of golde & gelbles quartery engrapht . And thi  
 ar calde armys engrapht for they ar made of . ii . colouris the Wich  
 graditly ar brougt to gedir oon colour m to an other colour



**O**ff armys quaterit and iraspt nold I Will speke .

**A**cton armys the be quarterit and iraspt  
 as here apperis . the Wich ctan armys ar cal  
 led quarterit armys iraspt . for the colouris be ra;  
 sit olt as oon colour i raspyng Ware take alway  
 from an othir . And it shall be sayd of him p<sup>e</sup> be;  
 ris theis armys in latyn thus . **P**ortat arma  
 quarteriata irasa de albo & nigro . Gallice sic  
 dargent et Sable quartlee irase . Anglice sic . **T**he beis  
 Siluer and Sable quarterly iraspt .



**E**l port  
 dargent et  
 Sable quart  
 lee irase .  
 Anglice sic .  
**T**he beis

Off armys quarterit inuechyt nolt here it shall be shewyd .

**T**her be yet folownde armys quarzli inuechyt . or as sum men say they be armys quarterit of cololours inuechyt as here apperis . the Wyth for soth as calde armys quarterit inuechyt or of cololours inuechyt . for i them ar . ii . colours quarzli put : y<sup>e</sup> toon i to the othir . & so con colours is inuehit i to an othir . Therefore it is said of hi y<sup>e</sup> beris theis armys i this Wyse . first i latyn thus **I**lle portat quarzlatum de asurio et auro inuectis **E**t gallice sic . **I**l port quarzli veuve asfor et dor . **A**nglice sic . **T**he brith quarzli inuechyt of asure and golde .



Nolt of armys quarterit indentyt it shall here be shewyd .

**Q**uarterit armys be founde diuerse the Wyth ar calde indentit as here apperis : and they ar calde indentit for . ii . colours con in to an othir by the man of teth ar indentit : as is oppn i the shelde . And thus ye shall blase theym first in latyn . **P**ortat arma quarteriata indenta ; ta de rubio et auro . **G**allice sic . **I**l port quarzellee indentlee de goblez et dor . **A**nglice . **T**he brith quarzli indentit of gobles and golde .



Off armys partit aftir the long Way here shall be shewyd .

**I**ntende nolt to dempn of armys partit after the longe Way the Wyth cōmparting aft the long Way or on length is made many man of Wyse . **T**he first pticion for soth is

of .ij. colouris in armys after the long Way in the playne man

**C** Ther is also a ptyng of armys of .ij. colouris ingradyt .

**C** And also ther is a ptyng of .ij. colouris irasit .

**C** Also forsoth ther is a ptyng of .ij. colouris muechyt .

**C** And ther is an othir ptyng of .ij. colouris endentit .

**C** Ther is also a ptyng of .ij. colouris clobdit or nbulatit .

**C** And more ouer ther is a ptyng of .ij. colouris Waterz .

**H**erest I shewyd to yow that ther be certan armys partit after the long Way of .ij. colouris in the playn Way as here apperis i theys armys . And they ar calde partit armys for they be made of .ij. colouris equal li ptit . And he that beris theis armys beris thys i latyn . *Ille portat arma partita plana secundum longum de auro et albo . Gallice sic .*

**C** Il port d'or et d'argent playn ptit . *Anglice sic .* He berith a fure and Syluer playn ptit .



**O**ff armys partit the long Way ingraleyt I witt shew here

**A**lso ther is ptycion of armys engraleyt the long Way as is said a fore bi engraylyng of .ij. colouris to gediz as here apperis . And theys armys ar calde armys engraylyt ptit after the long Way of siluer and Sable . And it shall be sayd of him that berith thes armys i latyn thus . *Portat arma ptita secundum longum ingradata de argento et nigro . Gallice sic .* **C** Il port d'argent ingraylee et Sable ptit du long . *Anglice sic .* He berith Syluer and Sable in engraylyt ptit after the long Way .





etc. now it shall be shewyd of a mynys partit and irasit.

**T**he thrid maner of Wyse ar founde a mynys partit of .ij. co-  
 lours & irasit as here. of the Wyche it is to be sayd: as  
 afore of quartett a mynys irasit. And he that  
 beiris thes a mynys: beiris in this Wyse as folowys  
 first in latyn thus. *Portat arma pita secundū*  
*longum irasa de argento et rubio. Gallice sic.*  
*Il port ptee du long argent et de gblez rase*  
*Anglice sic.* **A** The berith a mynys partit on  
 length of Siluer and gobles irasit.



**O**ff a mynys pite the long Way and inuectyt now I Will speke

**A**lso the fourith maner of Wyse: a mynys partit as borne af-  
 ter the longe Way of .ij. colours inuectyt as here apperis  
 And theis a mynys be cald inuectyt for the colou-  
 ris be put oon in to an othir on rounde Wyse.  
 And thes a mynys differ moch fro the a mynys next  
 beynge afore irasit. Wherefore it shall be sayd of  
 hym the Wyche beiris thes a mynys thus as it shall  
 folow first in latyn thus. *Ipsē portat arma*  
*partita secundum longum de coloribus albo et rubio inuectis.*  
*Gallice sic.* *Il port portee versu du long argent et de*  
*goblez.* *Anglice sic.* **H**e berith partit inuectyt on lengthe  
 of Siluer and gobles.



**O**ff armys partit on the long Bay & indentyd þat it is shewyd

**S**otheli an othir maner of partyt armys ther is the Bi  
che is calde the fyfthe maner partyt after the long Bay  
of .ii. colouris and theys armys ar called partyt  
indentyt. for thes cause that .ii. diuise colouris  
ar put to gethis: that is to say White and blac  
ar put to ged aft the man of menis tethe as it  
is sayd afore in the quarterit armys indentyt.  
And therfore ye shall say of hym the Wich beis  
theys armys in thes Wyse. first in latyn thus. *Portat ar  
ma partita secundum longum de argento et nigro indentata.*  
*Gallice sic. Il port partee endentez du long argent & sable*  
*Et anglie sic. The beith armys ptit indentit on length*  
*of Syluer and Sable.*



**O**ff armys partyt aft the long Bay clothyd or nebulatyd.

**I**n the sept man of Wyse ther be armys borne partyt aft  
the long Bay nebulatyt as here it shall be shewyd in this  
fiochon. And theys armys be calde innebulatyd  
for .ii. colouris ar put to gedre by the manere of  
clothydys. Therfore the possessor of theys armys be  
is in thes Wyse as it shall be sayd first i latyn  
thus. *Portat arma partita secundum longum  
de argento et auro innebulata. Et gallice sic.*  
*Il port ptie du long argent & d'or mneue.*  
*Anglice sic. The beith armys partyt on length of Sil  
uer and aune innebulatyt.*



Off armys ptyt Water of Syluer and golles this schoon is

**O**ver ouer aft theys armys aforeseyd pit thez be bo:ne  
armys partyt after the longe Way . and they be Water as  
here in this schoon it apperith . and theys armis  
as calde Water : for .ij. colobris as incartiet oon  
m to an other by the maner of Water trobulde W<sup>e</sup>  
Wynde . And ye shall say of him that beis theis  
armys in thys Wyse as folowys : first in latyn .



**P**ortat arma ptyta undosa secundum longu  
de argento et rubio . Gallice sic . **I**l port ptiee du long  
argent et de gollez ondee . Et anglie sic . **T**he beith  
armys partyt the long Way of Syluer and golles Water .

Noll here I begynne to speke of armys partyt ouerbast :

**H**ere noll folowys to se of armys ptyt ouerbast . the  
Which certan particion ouerbast is made as mony Wyse  
as is the ptycion on length . that is to say on the playn Way  
ouerbast . ingraflyt . trasit . muctryt . indentit . innebula  
tit . and Water . Wherefore of theys certayn  
shall be shewyd by signys . and first I begynne  
at playn armys ouerbast . as here it shall be shew  
wyd . And it shall be sayd of hym that beithe  
theys army in thys Wyse first in latyn thus .



**P**ortat arma partita extansu plano de au  
ro e asorio . Et gallice sic . **I**l port ptiee transuise dor e  
asor . Anglice sic . He beith golde and asure ptyt ouerbast

**K**nowe ye that here is no coloure of that first rule : that is  
to say that a man shall begyn at the poynt of the shelde to blase  
for here is as mych coloure of golde as of asure .

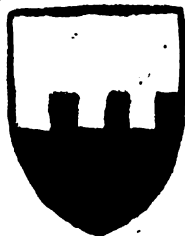
**O**ff armes irrasit oulbart nobb here it shall be shewyd .

**N**obb of a nothir maner of partycion of coloutis in armes  
oulbarte I will speke . And it is calde irrasit as here it  
shall appere in this scotion . of the Wich it is to  
be sayd that the gentyll man the Wich beis theys  
armys beis in this maner as folowis . first in  
latyn thus . **P**ortat arma partita extransuso  
irraso de auro et rubio . **E**t gallice sic . **I**l  
port partie transuerse irrase dor et goublez .  
**A**nglice sic . **T**he berith armys partyt ouerbart irrasyt  
of golde and goubles .



**N**obb of armys partyt oulbartt ye shall haue an exemple .

**A**rmys ther be also identyd oulbart and partyt . And  
they be calde indentyd for theyre colobris as is sayd afore  
as put conin to an othir be the maner of menims  
tethe . And it shall be sayd of him that beis  
theys armys in thys wyse . first in latyn thus .  
**P**ortat arma pita extransuso identata de auro  
et asorio as afore is rehersit . **E**t gallice sic .  
**I**l port ptie de traues dor et dasor endenter .  
**A**nglice sic **T**he berith armys ptyt oulbarte indentyt of  
golde and asur

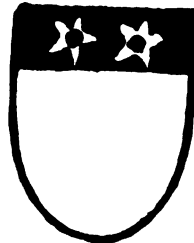


**A**nd to reherse moore of ptyt armys oulbarte it nedis not for  
it is rehersyt sufficientli in the rules next afore i armys ptyt on  
lengthe . Therfore it shall not be rehersyt here agayn . quia  
inutilis est repeticio vnus ad eiusdem . and that is to say

It is an onprofitabill reheysing of oon thyng to reheyse the same a gayn in the next sentens . Therefore to speke moore of armys partit and figure theym : othes of maynplis or iustis muet be indentit nebulatit and wnatit : it nedys not . for they be taught sufficiently i the long Bay . ¶ And I beleue it shall be hard to fynde mony moo armys ptyt aft the long Bay or ouerth then as reheysit a fore Neu the lees if any be founde or se : ne . in theym the same rules shall be obseruit : as is reheysit a fore . and it is enogh for all armys on that man to be blasit that any gentyl man worth ptyt .

Off armys the Rich as calde cheiff or an hede I will shewe .

**S**otheli certan men holde : p<sup>r</sup> theys armys after reheysit shulde be calde armys ptyt . the Rich certanli 12 2 for p<sup>r</sup> : that ther is no verti pticion of the colouris or any licenes of dyuision of colouris . Certanly in armys ptit it is requyrit althay that the ptyes of the colouris be equall . and that is not trew in this figure . for the moore ptye by mych is Siluer . Therefore ye shall say of hym that beris theys armys thys first in latyn . ¶ *Portat de argento et caput fultide asorio cū duabus maculis pforatis de auro* . Gallice sic . ¶ *Il port argent long cheiff asor et deux molettis ptes dor* . Et anglice sic . ¶ The berith Siluer a Cheiff or a Cheston of asure and ij. molettys pforat of golde .

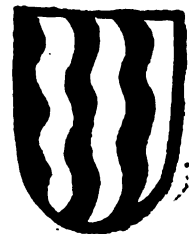


**A**nd ye shall know that i theys armys the rule afore Bre-  
 tyn most be considerit that is to say : that at the Coon it is to  
 begyn to blase if that coloure of the Coon be gatter or more co-  
 ppous coloure in armys as it is sayd afore **A**nd more ouer  
 it is to be merkylt that no armie albe to be calde ptept armie bot  
 iff they be made of .ij. colours onys partit and no more for ar-  
 mys palit ar not callit : nor albe not to be calde partit armys  
 all though they be made of .ij. colours for thes colours not al-  
 lonli onys bot dyuerse tymys ar partit as here apperis **A**nd  
 theys armys be calde palit armys for they be ma-  
 de bi the man of palis. **A**nd it shall be sayd of  
 hym that beris theys armys i latyn thus. **P**or-  
 tat arma palata de auro et asorio. **G**allice sic.  
**A**l port pale dor et asor. **A**nglice sic.  
**T**he berith pale of golde and asure.



**O**ff armys palit vndatit now here it shall be shewyd.

**P**alpt armys of tyme as founde vndatpt that is to say  
 vatter as here apperis. **A**nd theys be calde polpt ar-  
 mys vndatpt to the difference of barrit armys  
 vndatpt. the Wich armys barrit may also be vnd-  
 atpt as after shall be shewyd. **A**nd it shall be  
 sayd of him that beris theys armys thus in latyn  
**P**ortat arma palata vndata vel vndosa de rubio  
 et argēto. **E**t gallice sic. **A**l port poler  
 vnder de golblez et argent. **E**t anglice sic. **T**he berith  
 polp vndatpt of golbles and Siluer.



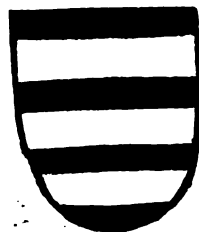
¶ Off armys palit crokpt and sharpe nobl 3 Bist speke .

**H**ere and beholde how mony maner of Wyse thes palit ar ;  
 mps be borne dyuerseli . as it is shewyd in thys boke .  
 and theis armys nobl shewyd here : be calde palit  
 crokpt and sharpe . for in theys armys . ii . colo ;  
 ris pale ar put to gethir : oon in to an othir cro ;  
 kptly and sharpe . Therefore it shal be sayd of hi  
 the which beis thes armys in thys Wyse . first i la ;  
 tyn thus . *Portat arma palata tortuosa acu*  
*ta de nigro et argento . Gallice sic .* ¶ *Il port pale d'armes*  
*de Sable et d'argent . Anglice sic .* ¶ The which pale crokpt  
 and sharpe of Sable and Sable .



¶ Off armys barrit playn nobl here it shal be shewyd .

**H**ere i thys chappure afore is determyned of palit armys  
 and in thys chappure nobl folowynge it shal be deter ;  
 myned of barrit armys . for the which it shal be knowl that ar ;  
 mps may be mony maner of Wyse barrit . and  
 the first maner of Wyse is playn barrit . as here  
 apperis . And ye shal knowl that thes be certan  
 armys barrit playn . and then ye shal nott ned  
 to say i the blasynge of theys armys : be which pla ;  
 yne armys barrit . For i all othyr disperynge ar ;  
 mps barrit : ye most nedys declare the blasynge of theym howe  
 thes barrit armys differ from playn . for sū be barrit w<sup>t</sup> a  
 Lyon rumpynge or a grehounde or othir bestis & sū be barrit &



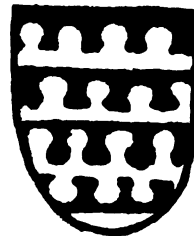
pollerit With eris croflettyes molettys Scescentis fmale briddis  
 or other difference bot as for theys playn armis afore ye shal  
 fay in latyn in thys Wyfe. *Portat arma barrata de argento & ni;*  
*gro Et gallice fic .* ¶ *Il port barre dargent et Sale .*  
*Anglice fic .* ¶ The betith barri of Siluer and Sable

¶ Off barrit armys vndatit nobl 3 Wyll shew as apperith .

**R** nalye for etan that armys barrit othis Wile be barrit &  
 vndatit that is to say Water . as here it apperith . And  
 they be called barrit vndatit for they be made of . ii . colouris me  
 tyng to gedre by the maner of a floyng Watte as  
 it is oppn afore . And ye shalt say of hym that  
 beris theis armys i this Wyfe . first i latyn thus  
 ¶ *Portat arma barrata vndata de nigro et albo*  
*Gallice fic .* ¶ *Il port barri vnder de Sable*  
*et dargent . Anglice fic .* ¶ The beris barri vndatit  
 of Sable and Siluer .



¶ Off armys barrit and murekht ye shal haue exemple  
**B** arrit armys murekht as borne of diuerse gentill men .  
 as here is shewyd . And thay ar called murekht for in  
 eueri barre . ii . colouris ar put murekht by the ma  
 ner of a rounde Way as is sayd afore . And he p<sup>e</sup>  
 beris this armys beris in thys Wyfe . first in la  
 tyn thus . ¶ *Portat arma barrata de coloribus*  
*rubeo et albo murectis . Et gallice fic .*



¶ *Il port barri verree de golblez et dargent .*  
*Anglice fic .* ¶ The berith barri murekht of golbles and Sil  
 uer .  
 ¶ And 3 begyn With golbles for that colour is the  
 first in the right comest .



Off a myps barryt crokpt and sharpe as here aft is shewit.

**G**entill men thes be certanli the Rich beys armis barryd crokpt and sharpe as here it apperith in theys a myps . and thay be called a myps barryt for differance of a myps the same man of Wyse polt : and thay be called crokpt and sharpe . for as it is sayd a fore . ii . colouris az put to gethyr crokptli and sharpe . Therefore it shal be sayd that the lord the Rich beys theys a myps berith in this Wyse . first i latyn



*Ille portat arma barriata tortuosa et acuta de nigro et auro .*  
*Et gallice sic .* **C***il port barri duncetes acute de Sable et dor*  
*Anglice sic .* **T***he berith barri crokpt and sharpe of Sa :*  
*ble and golde .*

Now it shal be shewyd of a myps that ar bendy barryt .

**T**hes be forsothe certan a myps bendli barryt . and thei be called bendy barryt . and for this cause they be cald bendy barryt . for . ii . colouris az iunyt to gether in euery barre bendy . as it is oppn here i theis armis And therefore it shal be sayd of him that beys theis a myps : in this Wyse as folowis . first in latyn thus . *Ipse portat arma bendaria de rubio et auro .* *Et gallice sic .* **C***il port barre bendee de goullez et dor .* *Anglice sic .* **T***he berith barri bendy of goulles and golde .*



**N**ot neuer the les ye most diligently attende in the blasynge  
of sych armys : as palys barrit and bendyt . for and they ben  
not suttelly consaunt a man sodanly onslaynyng may lightly in  
thoos armys be dissayunt . For certainly thoos armys be called  
palys armys in the which ar folowde so many palys of oon coloure  
as ar of an other . And iff the palys of bothe the colours ben  
not equall thoos armys be not palys .

**I**n diuerse armys of gentill men be folowde . ii . palys of oon  
coloure . and . iij . of an other as here in theis armys folowynge  
it shal be shewed . that is to say ther be . iij . pa-  
lys of gobles and . ii . of golde for of the coloure  
of reede apperith . iij . partes in the shelde and bot  
ii . allone of the coloure of golde Therefore the ge-  
ntill man that berith theis armys : beris i this wyse  
e thus ye shal say of him . first in latyn thus .



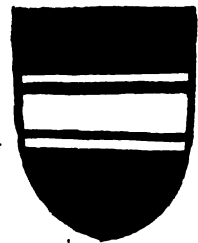
*Portat duos palos aureos in campo rubeo . Et gallice sic .*

*Il port de gobles et deux pales dor . Et anglie sic .*

He berith gobles and . ii . palys of golde .

Here ye shal diligently make armys barrit and les barrit .

**T**he most also diligently attende to the nombre of both too  
colours in armys palys barrit or les barrit of the which  
littill barrit ye most be ware When thay be folowde  
in armys . as here it is shewed in theis armys .  
for sych lynes be called littill barrit to the diffe-  
rence of littill barrit . And it shal be sayde that  
the gentill man the which berith theis armys beris  
in this thys wyse first in latyn thus as folowis



**P**ortat conam barum et duas barulas de albo in campo rubio . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goublez vng barres et deux barrelettes d'argent . Et anglie sic . **T**he brith goubles con barre and .ij. litell baris of Syluer .

**N**ow I wyll speke of armys barid & litell baris florishyt

**H**olde how the forsayd litell baris ar othyrwyle made florishyngli & than the be calde florishyt as here i thys scochon . And they be calde florishyt : for they be made bi y<sup>e</sup> maner of a flosure deluce . And ye shall say of him that is possessor of theys armys i thys wise as folowys . first in latyn thus . **P**ortat conam barum et duas barulas floridas albas in scuto siue campo blodio . Gallice sic . **I**l port de for vng barres et deux barrelettes florit d'argent . Anglice sic . **T**he brith asure con bar and .ij. litell baris florishyt of Syluer .



**N**ow I intende to speke of bendys in armys as here .

**O**ther wyle thes is borne in armys a bende as is founde i dyuerse armys of certan noble gentylmen as here now it shall be shewyd . And ye moost knowe that it is calde a bende the which begynnys at the right corner or the borne of the sheldre : and descendith to y<sup>e</sup> left side of the same sheldre : to the differans of fif fures or of litell staups of the which it shall be spoken after . And of hym that has theys armys ye shall say thus as folowys . first in latyn . **P**ortat conam



bendam de rubio in campo aureo . Gallice sic . **I**l port  
 dor song bende de gblez . Anglice sic . **T**he beth gold e  
 a bende of goldes .

**O**ff liffest bendys in armys noll here is an exempel .

**R**Maib ye hold afore it is sayd that certan littylst baris ar  
 as borne i armys mony tymys . On the same maner of wise  
 as borne littill bendys as here it shall be shewyd . And they be  
 cald bendylls to the differans of grete bendys  
 as it is oppn . And of hym that becis theys th  
 it shall be sayd . first in latyn as here folowys .

**P**ortat quoniam bendam et duas bendulas de auro  
 i campo blando . Et gallice sic . **I**l port asoz  
 song bend et deux bendelettis dor . Anglice sic .



**H**e berith asure a bende and .ij. bendils of gold . And thes  
 bendys ar othirwyle florishyd as is shewyd in the figure a fore  
 in baris . And in diuse armys they be founde that they be  
 cheuyt . and sun be polderit with molettis . and sum with odir  
 dyfferans the wich nedys not to be figurit here

**O**ff armys palit and bendyd noll here it shall be shewyd

**T**he best maner of dysse certanly of beynge of dysse ar  
 mys in con sheelde is in theys bendys bering for a man  
 that has a patrunong left by his fadyr . and o;  
 thes certan londys by his modyr cumpng to him  
 to the wich londys of his moderis ar appropurt  
 armys of olde tyme for it may hap that theys  
 armys coom to hir by the way and dykent of hir  
 progenyturis . then may the houre and hym list



here the boote armys of his fadyr in y<sup>r</sup> boote shelde . And i speke  
a bende he may bere his moders armys as here in the scochon after  
appears . And it shall be sayd of him that beris theys armys in  
latyn thus . **P**ortat arma palati de argento et rubio cum una  
benda de nigro . Gallice sic . **I**l port palee d'argent et de goul  
les et ung bende de sabull . Anglice sic . **H**e berith palee of  
Syluer and golles With a bende of sabull .

**A**nd wythynle i speke a bende ther is founde . iij . molatys  
or mangles of golde .

**O**ff armys bende fusillyt here noth 3 But expemust .

**W**he ou ther be founde in armys othe certan bendeys to su  
man strange from theys . and here 3 Byt sheld to yow a  
bende the Wyth is calde a bende fusillit : as here ap  
peith in this scochon . And it is calde fusillit for  
it is made all of fusillis of the Wyth certan fusillis  
more shall be spokyn afterward . Bot he the Wyth  
has theys armys beris in latyn thus . **P**ortat  
penam bencam fusillatam de auro in campo asorio  
Gallice sic . **I**l port asor ung bende fusillat cor .  
Anglice sic . **T**he berith asur a bende fusillit of golde .

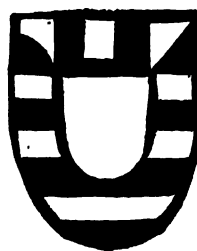


**A**nd thes bende mory tyme is borne With strangeris and  
specialli in Burgon .

long bordure wete dargent et de sable . Anglice sic

**T**he brich quarly gobles and golde With a bordure muel  
lyt of siluer and sable .

**B**ut i thes borduris ther is a grete differens emog men  
portendyng theym epte and Wyse m thys sciens as spe:  
cially it is oppn i tharmpes m olde tyme of thele of Marche Wped  
they shulde be calde borduris or not . as hte i thys  
figure . And certan men say y' men not puttynge  
a mezueles differens of blasynge say : that the for  
sajd Eyle of marche the Wiche Wos calde Roger  
Mortememer Wten that he leupd bare a rmpes in la  
tyn m thys Wyse to say **C**Portauit arma pola  
ta barata et contraconata de asorio ⁊ auo cum uno simplici scuto  
de argenteo . Gallice sic . **C**Il port pale barre gironne de for  
de et long eku simple dargent . Anglice sic . **T**he brich pa  
ly bari contrari conyt of asure ⁊ golde With a siple shelde of silu .



**A**nd this oppnyon afore rehysit m the blasynge plesyt ma:  
ny a man the Wich m no man of Wyse may be trib . For if thes  
armpes as it is sayd afore Wat contrari conatit : then the lastest  
corner or the coone of tharmpes that is to say the lastest mynt of  
the shelde may neu be of con coloure as certanly it is of asure .

**O**ver thys thynge afore rehysit m thes armis it is cōn  
that m all armpes contrari conyt all the conys of Wbat sum en co  
loure tharmpes be made they mete to gedye conally m the middis  
of the shelde . as m the next figure of the shelde oppuly it shalt

be sheldyd. Wherfore as it apperith to my reson tuler they shal  
 be blasit on this Wyse: exceptit the gretter autente that is for  
 sayd Erle of Marche breith thus in latyn. **P**ortauit arma  
 barata et apud fusti palatum et angulatum de auro et auro cum  
 quodam scuto simplici et argento. Et gallice sic. **I**l port  
 barrez et long Cheff pale ainece dor et dor et long estu simple  
 argent. Et anglia sic. **T**he breith barri and a Cheff pa  
 le angulat of a fure and golde With a symple sheld of Silu.

**O**ff armys contrari conpt here I Wilt informe you

**T**her be yit for sooth diuerse noble men the Wich be armys  
 contrari conpt. as here in thys kochen apperith. And  
 theys armys be calde contrari conpt for this cause.  
 for all the colouris of theys armys meete to gedis  
 at on coone. that is to say at the myddyst poynt  
 of the sheld only. For euery body triangulit is  
 more of lengthe than of berte and naamly conpt  
 not pz. Therefore the oppnyon of thos men the Wy  
 che sayd that the armys afore carysit: that is to Witte of the  
 les armys of Marche War palst barrit and contrari conpt is to  
 be receuyt. for so mych that the conps of the forsayd armys



acorde not the Rich of necessite shulde acorde iff the foresayd opp  
 nyon Ber tris . And of hym that beys theys armys ye shall  
 say in latyn . **P**ortat arma contrasonata de blodio et albo  
 Et gallice sic . **I**l port gironne d'azur et d'argent . Anglice sic .  
**H**e berith contrai conpt of asure and siluer .

**O**ff pilis armys now here it shall be shewyd :

**A**s as mych as it is spokyn afore of armys : in the Rich  
 the colobris mete to gedys in the myddist poynt cony .  
 Now solowpeth of certan armys in the Rich .ij. pi ;  
 us mete to gedys in con coone . as here in thys fi ;  
 gure . And it shall be sayde of hym the Rich be ;  
 us theys armys in latyn in thys Wyse .

**P**ortat tres pilas nigras in campo aureo .  
 Gallice sic . **I**l port dor trois piles de sable .  
 Et anglice sic . **T**he berith golde .ij. pilis of sable



**O**ff ballis in armys here now it shall be shewyd .

**E**uer the les ye most consydre a differens i theys blasyn  
 gys of theys armys afore : and theys that cum after  
 When ye blase theym in latyn tong . for othe: While thys terme  
 pila i latyn is take for to be a prese of tymbre to be put vnder the  
 palor of a bryge : or to syche a like Werke as i thepempull asos  
 And ody: While this terme pila is take for a certan rounde istru  
 met to play W : the Rich istruumēt fure othe: While to the hande



and then it is calde i latyn *pila manualis* as here  
 And other while it is an instrument for the foote  
 and then it is calde in latyn *pila pedalis* a fote bal  
 Therfor it shall be sayd of hym that beris thes ar  
 mps in latyn *Portat tres pilas argenteas*



in campo rubio . Et gallice sic . *Il port de*  
*goblez trois pelettis d'argent* . Et anglie sic . *The berith*  
*gobles in ballis of Siluer* .

**O**rtanlye most merke that i this figure of ballis a mā  
 may soon er . Besfore shortly it is to be know that sich  
 ballis may haue all colobres but the colobre of golde for e ther  
 be of goldyn colouris : they shulde be calde *talentis* or *besantis* the  
 Wich be eu of golden colobre .

### Off tortellys or litill Cakys in armys .

**T**hes be also tortellis y<sup>e</sup> be litill Cakys  
 the Wich be grettir then ballys e tharmys  
 be truly made as here it is oppn . And be that be  
 ris thes armys beris in this wyse first i latyn .



*Portat tres tortellas rubias i campo aureo* .  
*Gallice sic* . *Il port de et trois torteulp de*  
*goblez* . Et anglie sic . *The berith golde e . in . Cakys of*  
*gobles* .

**M**ore ouer merke : that as Bele ballys in armys as kakis  
 and besantis all Way as holt volnde figuris e not pformt

### Off fontans or Bellis here I will speke .

**N**eu the les ther be cōm nobult men the Wich ber sich rounde fi  
 guris : the Wich figuris as calde fontans or Bellis as here ap

peris. the which fontans eumore most be of Whyte  
coloure for the thyng the which they represent.

For they represent eumore the coloure of the Wa-  
ter of a Well the which is white And of hym y<sup>e</sup>  
beris thes armys ye most say in latyn thus.

**P**ortat tres fontes i campo aureo. Gallice sic

**I**l port doz et trois fonteyns. Anglice sic. **The** berith  
of golde and .ij. Wellis.



**O**ff ryngys the which be otheer rounde instrumentis 3 Will speke

**A**fter theis rounde figuris a fore rehersyt  
ther be cīan figuris the which be pforatit as  
be ryngys: as here apperis. And it shall be sayd  
of hym that beris theis armys i latyn thys.

**P**er  
tat tres anulos aureos i campo nigro. Gallice

sic **I**l port de sable et trois anulettis doz. An

glice sic. **He** berith Sabutt and .ij. ryngys of golde.

**O**ff tractys in armys.

**A**fore it is sayd of borduris i armys. now it folowith to  
se of tractis or lynys. and first of a symple tract. and  
they be calde tractis for as mych as the felde remay-  
nyng of tharmys as Wele With i as With olde. &  
an otheer lyne is drawyn of an otheer coloure as  
here: to the man of a shelde. And it shall be sayd  
of hym that beris thes armys i latyn.

**P**ortat  
unū tractū simplicem planam aureū i campo asoreo

Gallice sic. **I**l port asoreo unū trace playn doz. Anglice sic

**The** berith asure a playn tract of golde.



**O**ff a tract engraynt on booth the sydes here is an exemple.

**A** tract or a lyne otheer While is engraynt on booth the pa-  
tes as here in thys figure apperith. And then it shall

be sayd of hym that beris theys armys i thes Wy  
 se first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unum tractu  
 ex utraque parte ingratum de auro i campo rubio  
 Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goublez ung trace  
 ingraphe de chescun coste dor . Anglice sic .  
**H**e berith goubles wyth a tract ingraphyt on bo  
 thy the sydes of golde .



**O**ff a tract dobbull and florishyt it shal be thesyt .

**T**hes tract is othe Wyse dobbull as in the armys of the  
 Kyng of Scottelonde . as here in this fechon apperis . &  
 the forsayd Kyng of Scottelond beris i thes Wy  
 se first in latyn thus . **P**ortat duplicem trac  
 tum cum floribus gladioli contraposis et uno  
 leone capaci de rubio in campo auro . Et galli  
 ce sic . **I**l port dor ung dobble trace florisee  
 cointree et ung leon rampant de goublez . An  
 glice sic . **H**e berith golde a dobble trace florishyt contrari  
 and a Lyon rampyng of goubles .



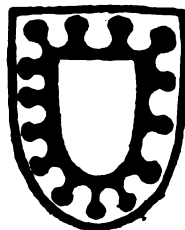
**O**ff tractis triplatis and quatrilatis othe Wyse .

**A**mo of thes armys afore rehysit . I fynde more dyuersite  
 for thes be certan nobill men the which bere thes tractis  
 triplatis as here in thes fygyre . and sum bere hit  
 quatrilatis as is founde i diuise armys . And ye  
 shal say of hym that beris thes armys triplatis  
 i latyn thus . **P**ortat tractum triplicatū de al  
 bo i campo auro . Gallice sic . **I**l port dor ung  
 trace triplee dargent . Anglice sic . **H**e be  
 rith golde a trace triplatis of siluer .



Off a tract symple of .ij. coloris and murekt an exemple

There be other nobill men the which have a symple tract of .ij. coloris murekt as here now it shall be shewyd in this scoon . And the possessor of thes armes beis in this wyse as folowis first in latyn . *Portat unum tractum simplicem de coloribus auro et argento muretis in scuto aureo . Et gallice sic .* *Il port dor ung trace simple verme d'or et d'argent . Anglice sic .* The beith gold and a tract symple murekt of a fure and Silves .



After tractis now it shall be spokyn of fessuris or staups .

Afore thes fessuris it is spokyn of bendys : and their differans . Now it shall be spokyn of fessuris . the which can fessuris or staups begynne in the lefte borne of the sheld : e as drawne to the right parte of the sheld beneath to the differance of bendys the which begynne in the right borne of the sheld e as drawne to the lefte side of the sheld beneath . and thes way most the fessure be drawne as here apperis in this figure . And ye shall understande that theis fessuris differ as many ways as the forsayd bendys differ . but it nedys not to be rehersyd for it is playn shewyd afore . There be fessuris or staups playn . murekt . murekt . and fusyllat . as I sayd afore in the place of bendys . And thes staups bastardys as wont to be or namli thay shuld be thaym . And then thes fessure is cald a staffe : e in french it is cald a baston



Bot commonly it is calde a fissure for as mych that he cleupe  
his faderis armys m. ij partes for that bastard is clouny and  
druget from the patrimony of his fader. And so sych a bastard  
is forbedyn to bere the hoost armys of his fader for the reuerans  
of his blode. bot his faderis armys he may bere with sych a sta  
ffe as is sayd afore: in signe and finall declamacon of his bas  
tardy and to the differance of propur and naturall bayre of  
his fader. And When ye haue any sych a playn fissure or a  
staffe i armys or engraylit mueckyt or fusillatit: of that same  
staffe ye shall say as a fore is rehersit in the chapitour of bandys  
moore playnli. And the bastarde the which berith theys armys  
possessis in latyn on thys maner as nobl hys folowys.

**P**ortat unam fissuram siue baculum aureum i campo asorio.

**G**alluce sic. **I**l port d'asor et ung fees dor. **E**nglice sic

**T**he which asure and a fissure or a staffe of golde.

**N**ow here I begynne to speke of armys hedyd as it apperis.

**T**her be certan nobill men the which be armys hedyd as here  
it apperith. And ye most know that theis armys be cal  
led hedyd: When the hyer parte of the shelde that is  
to say the hede is made of oon colour or of moo then  
of oon. & that parte extendys not to the myddis  
of the shelde as aboon is sheldyt by the shelde.  
And knowe ye that in the hedyd armys is a good  
man of keepng of dyuse armys as by fortune su  
noble man has many londis and grette lordshippes by his mo  
dyr for the which londys of his moderis he intendys to bere the  
armys of his modyr. and so he may do for it is rightwys.



Not he that descendys of a nobull fadyr or of a gentill man .  
 by the Wyche he had any simple patrimony . then sych a nobull  
 man : and he Wilt : may bere the hoolt armys of his moodyr in  
 the labyr parte of his shelde . and in sych an hede as I sayd  
 a fore he may and he Wilt bere the hoolt armys of his fadyr  
 And it shall be sayd of hym that beys theys armys i thys Wy  
 se first in latyn thus . **C**oxtat conum signum capitale de ni  
 gro in campo aureo cum cono capite rubio et tribus talentis i eo  
 dem . Et gallice sic . **I** port dor ung cheuron de Sabull  
 et ung Cheff de goblez et trois besantis en la mesmes .  
 Anglice sic . **T**he berith golde a cheuron of Sabull W  
 a Cheff of gobles and .iij. besantis thez in .

**A**nd ther be certan nobull psones the Wyche ber in the shel  
 de afore wryt of golde as is sayd a fore a Cheuron of Sa  
 bull or of sum odyr coloure and .iij. rede wofis or Wyhte or sum  
 othez sygnys as crossis cressantis braddys or floutris and a che  
 ff sum of Sabull sum of othez coloure with the signe of molet  
 tis or odes toknyng the Wyche need not to be wryt . And then  
 shall euerich oon of theym be blasit in his nombur like as the  
 felde and the signes require : as by fortune sum men bere thus  
 to say . The berith Sabull a Cheuron of golde .iij. rede wofis  
 of gobles a Cheff of asure Wych .iij. moletys performat of West  
 and thus of all othez differansys .

**O**ff armys palit With oon quarter of an othez coloure .

**C**ertanly ther be sum nobull men the Wyche bere in thez ar  
 mys con quarter of an othez coloure dyfferyng from the

coloure or the colobris of the shelde as here . in the  
 Wich armis it is to be sayd that the nobull man the  
 Wich beis theym berith in this Wyse first in latyn .

**P**ortat arma palata de aserio e auro cum una  
 quarta eremetica . Et gallice sic . **I**t port  
 pale d'asor et d'or ung quart d'ermyn . Et anglie  
 sic . **H**e berith pale asor and golde With con quart of Ermyne .



**A**nd it is to be notit that ye most haue a respreynt to the co  
 loure of that pale the Wich shulde ascende to the right borne of the  
 shelde iff that quartet Were not ther . and i that coloure ye most  
 eu moore begyn to blase thos armys like as the quart Were not  
 ther as afor is requirit .

**R**ole of armys chakerit here ye shall haue an exemple .

**O**ver ouer other Whyle We se armys chakerit as here now  
 it apperith in thys figure folowynge and they be cald ar;  
 mys chakerit When they are made of .ij. colours to  
 the maner of a chaker . And theys armys resay;  
 ue many differens as in hodes or quarters i bar  
 ris and bendis and other dyles i Cheurons of y<sup>e</sup>  
 Wich it shall be spokyn anon folowynge . And of  
 hym the Wich possessis theys armys ye shall say in  
 latyn thus . **P**ortat arma kakkata de aserio et auro . Et  
 gallice sic . **I**t port kakke d'asor et d'or . Anglice sic .  
**T**he berith Chakker of asure and golde



## Off Cheurons the Rich i englysh ar cald colpuils of sparris

**W**e haue sothell in armys certan signys the Rich ar cald Cheurons in french . And they be cald in latyn Signa capitulia vel tigna . and in englysh a colpuilt of sparris as here is sheldyd i theys signes : the Rich signes by likenes first War bozne of carpentaries and makers of holuses . for an holuse is neu made p fite tyt thos sparris be put a pon hit : by the maner of an hede . and .ij. syche sparris or cheurons ionyt to gedyr make a capitall sygne . y<sup>e</sup> is to say a colpuilt of sparris . and other While . ij. syche be bozne i armys and othez While . iij. odyz While . iiii . as it is knaldyn . And of hym that beris theys armys afore ye shall say thus as folowys first i latyn . **P**ortat de rubio et duo signa capitulia de auro c<sup>i</sup> tabus talentis . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de golbz et deux Cheurons dor et trois talent . Anglice sic . **H**e berith golles and .ij. Cheurons of golde Rich iij besantis .



## Off a Cheuron or a sygne capitall engraplt here is sheldyt .

**A**lso a Cheuron is othez While engraplt as here and then it is to be sayd of hym the Rich beris theys armys in latyn in theys wyse . **P**ortat unum signum capitale in gradatim de albo in campo aforo . Et gallice sic . **I**l port d'aso : ung Cheuron d'argent engraple . Anglice sic . **H**e berith a fure and a Cheuron of Splus engraplt .





**O**ff dyuerse and meruelus Cheurons yit 3 Bitt speke .

**O**ne ouer yit i theys signys of Cheurons other Whyle is folowde a coloure in the blasynge of theym . Wher thei be made of dyuerse colours transmutat as here in this schoon apperith . And of hym the Wyche betis thes armys ye shall say in latyn . **P**ortat arma quaterinata de nigro & argento cum uno signo capitali de dictis coloribus transmutatis . **G**allice sic . **I**l port quaterlees de sable & argent & ung Cheuron changee lung de laultre . **E**ngliche sic . **T**he be- rith quarterly Sable and Silver With a Cheuron of the sayd colours transmutat .



**O**ff Cheurons differynge on the longe Way :

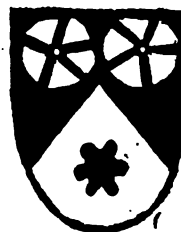
**A**lso theys signys of Cheurons be differet after the longe Way in armys as here in this figure apperith . And then of hym the Wyche betis thes armys ye shall say in latyn . **P**ortat arma partata secundū lōgū de coloribus auro & rubro cum uno signo capitali de dictis coloribus transmutatis . **G**allice sic . **I**l port partie du long de dor & goublez ung che- ron changee lung de laultre . **E**ngliche sic . **T**he be with party ast the longe Way of .ij. colours golde and goudes With a Cheuron of the sayd colours transmutat .



**O**ff colours among heroddis i blasynge theys armys sayng

**A**mong othyr colours : a coloure the blasynge of tharmis here folowynge now next 3 haue herde heroddis pretendynge

theym selfe veri conyng in blaspng of azmpys mes  
uelusli to dreeme in the blaspng of theys azmpys .  
And sum holde oon oppynpon and sum an othyr .  
neues the les it is no grete neede to doubte in the  
blaspng of theym as to conyng men . Therefore  
of hym y<sup>e</sup> beis thes azmpys ye shall say i latyn .



**P**ortat duas ptes capitis kuti de rubio & iāam ptem de albo ad  
modum signi capitalis et tres roses de coloribus transmutatis .  
Et gallice sic . **L** port lez deux ptes du chief de goblez et le  
troisième d'argent ptes en manere du cheuon et trois roses lung  
de l'autre . Anglice sic . **H**e beith .ij. parties of the heade of the  
shelde gobles and the thirde pte Silver by the maner of a che  
uon and .ij. roses of the same coloribus transmutit .

**O**ff azmpys fusyllis in englysh fpyndyllis nob 3 Will speke .

**T**her be certan gentylmen and nobles the Wich beere in theyr  
azmpys fusellis : of the nombur of the Wich : my lord of  
Gloucester y<sup>e</sup> nobull prince uncle to kynge henri the sept was .  
For he had in his azmpys .ij. fusillis of gobles by the maner of a  
bar in a felde of silver the Wich etan azmpys this  
nobull duke bare by the reson of certan lordes be  
longyng to the mounte . Bot ye shall say of hym  
that beis theys azmpys i this schoon in latyn th9



**P**ortat de rubio et tres fusulos de argento .  
Et gallice sic . **L** port de goblez et trois fusulez  
d'argent . Anglice sic . **H**e beith gobles and .ij. fusules  
of Silver . And otherwhyle theys .ij. fusules or .iii. be borne  
by the maner of a pale .

It is to be notit that Whē .iij. fusiles or .ij. at borne or moe to the nombur of .ix. the Wich nombur is thei epce de : say euermore that thos armys be polderit With fusillis or other thyngys and noon othyr Wyse . **C** And so generalli ye most knalb that iff any thyng be borne in armys ouer the nombur of .ix. then thos armys What sum euer they be thay ar polderit .

**O**ff oon fusyll borne in armys here I Will expmull.

**O**ther While oon fusyll is borne allon in armys as here i theys figure it apperith . in Wich mater I haue had certan heroddis wolte in theyr oppynponys . Neū the lees it is cōan that ye shall say of hym the Wich beis theys armys With oble wolte i latyn thus as so : lobis . **P**ortat de rubio cum uno fusulo de auro **E**t gallice sic . **I**l port de goblez ung fusill cor **A**nglice sic . **T**he beith gobles and a fusill of gold .



**O**ff an fusyll of dyuerse colobris now here I Will speke .

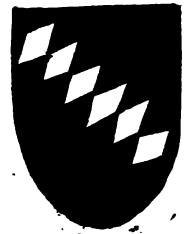
**A**ls theys fusillis sum tyme ar borne of dyuerse colobris as here in theys figure it is shewyd . **N**ot it is a moore wolte how theys armys shulde be blasit then thar : mys afore . but ye shall say i latyn of hym the Wy che has thes armys in this Wyse . **P**ortat arma partita ex transuerso de albo et nigro cum uno fusulo ex eisdem coloribus transmutatis . **E**t gallice sic . **I**l port partie de trauers d'argent et sable et ung fusill de mesmes colours lung de laultre . **E**t anglice sic



**H**e beith armys partit ouerwart of Silver & sable With a fussyllt of the saam colobour transmutit.

**O**ff fussyllis by the maner of a bende here 3 Butt sūbat say.

**M**ore ouer sych fussyllis az borne in armys by the maner of a bende . as here noll apperith And then ye shall say of hym the Wich p'ssessis theys armys in this Wyse first in latyn thus . **P**ortat unam bendam fusillatam de auro in campo rubeo . Et gallice sic **I**l port de goublez ung bende fussyllt dor . Et anglice sic . **H**e beith goubles and a bende fussyllit of golde .



**O**ff a bar fussyllit in armys here is an exemple .

**A**lso thes be borne in armys theys fussyllys in a bar fussyllit as here it apperith . And then it is to be sayd of hym the Wich hath theys armys in latyn thus . **P**ortat de rubio cum una barra fusillata de argento . Gallice sic . **I**l port de goublez ung barre fussyllt dargent . Et anglice sic . **H**e beith goubles and a bar fussyllt of Silver . And sum men say that the forsayd armys began of Beueris for as mych as Beueris tose sich fussyllys made of sponnyng Wolt



**K**nowe ye 2<sup>e</sup> differans betwix ffusillis Masculis & Losynge

**N**ow here ye shall knowe the differans betwix fusillis masculys and losynge . Wherefore it is to be knowe that

fusyllis ar euer more long also fusyllis ar stratty euerwart in  
the balp then ar Mascules . And Mascules ar larger ouwart  
in the balp : and shorter in length then be fusyllis . as here i this  
schoon it apperith . And it shalt be sayd of hym  
that possessis theys armys in this Wyse . first i la  
tyn . **P**ortat de rubio q sep makulas de auro .  
Et gallice sic . **I**l port de goubles et .vi. mascu  
les dor : Et anglie sic . **T**he brith goubles  
and sep makules of golde .



And theys makules other While ar pformit as I sayd ofore  
in the chapitour of the cross masculatit .

Off an othyr maner of makules yit here I will speke .

Also other While ar borne armys masculatit as here now  
in this figure folowynge is shewyd . And ye shalt con  
uerstande that thos armys be cald masculatit in  
the which the foresayd makules begyn most plentif  
ly in the right angle of the sheldre . and as endid  
towarde the lefte pte . the which certan armys in up  
ped ar polit . q ar deuydit i to .iij. palyes yf thes be  
subtile consaynt . And of hym that beris theys  
armys it shalt be sayd i this Wyse first in latyn . **P**ortat ar  
ma masculata de argento q asorio . Et gallice sic  
d'argent et dorz makulee . Et anglie sic . **T**he berith  
of Silues and asure masculatit .



## Off losynge both and What maner of Wyse they be made.

**A**lso losynge no maner of Wyse be made bot i armys be-  
dit . nei they may not be made by the selfe . and they be  
made att Way as theys be made bendit . And ye  
shall haue the moost wery differans by this the  
forsayd makulatit armys and bendid in the pictu-  
ris of the forsayd armys . And ye most take theys  
for a generall enformacion and instruccio that  
certanli losynge eumore stande vpright : that is  
to say that the hyest poynt or the height : eu ascendis to haue or to  
a manys head . so that the hyest poynt extendys vnto the he-  
ed of the shelde . and of the ouerwart corneris oon extendis vnto  
the right side . and that other corner extendys to the lef-  
te side of the shelde . and the last part extendys to the last part  
of the shelde dyametrall as it is oppn in the shelde next a  
fore . And so Wich olde wyse we haue the differans of the for-  
sayd signes . that is to wete of Makules and Losynge .  
Nota also the forsayd susples neuer be founde pformit nei lo-  
synge as fore sayd be neu pformit .



**K**nowe of a signe i armys y<sup>e</sup> is cald a Saltori a man of a cross

**T**her is an other maner of signe in armys : by dyse  
nobull men borne : the Wich is cald a Saltori . and it  
is made by the man of a cross of Saynt andrew  
as here now it apperith . And this cross is lic-  
ket after certan men to an instrument made in  
dyverse parties the Wich is of a grette magnytude  
or largenes : to the comparison of this signe .  
And it is Well knowe of nobull gentlmen and



hunneris that sych saltatories az ordant in many parishes & pla-  
 ces to take Wilde bestys the which onys their enterpynge: by that  
 instrumente may neu goo a gape. Wherfore in olde tyme thes  
 signys were geuyn to rich men. and otheerlyse calde auarice  
 Mygones or keperis the which men suffre not their tresures i what  
 maner of wyse they be getyn: to passe from theym. And of  
 hym the which possessis thes armys ye shall say in latyn. **P**or-  
 tat de a ferro et onum saltatorium de auro. Et gallice sic.  
**I**l port d'ors ung saultier dor. Et anglie sic. **A** The brith asure and a  
 Saltory or a saltier of golde.

**O**ff armys saltire engradit her 3 Bitt exemplif.

**H**ow her ye most knab that thes armys Saltire o:  
 ther While engradit as her in thes figure nobl appetith  
 And thep they be calde saltire engradit as it is  
 sayd afore in many placis. as of the crose engradit  
 of baris and bendys. And of hym that beis  
 thes armys ye shall say in latyn. **P**ortat co-  
 num saltatorium engradatum de auro in campo a-  
 sario. Et gallice sic. **I**l port d'ors ung saul-  
 tier dor engraple. Et anglie sic. **A** The brith asure and  
 a crose saltire of golde engradit.



**O**ff many crossis saltire borne in armys engradit an exemple

**O**ther While they be borne many crossis saltire i armys en-  
 gradit in oon sheld. other While. ij. other While. iij. as

here . And of hym that beris theys armys thus  
it shal be sayd in latyn . **P**ortat onam bar  
ram planam et tria saltatoria mgradata de auro i  
campo rubro . Et gallice sic **A**z port de golb;  
lez long barre playn et trois saultiers engreilez dor  
Et anglice sic . He berith goldes oon bar playn  
and iij . saltire crossis engreipt of golde .



**O**ff crowns in armys borne by the maner of a pale .

**I**t is diligentli to be markyt that When We say sich a lor  
de berith . in sych spgnyes . Hold theys . iij . signes as bor  
ne in armys We say not all Way . For other While theys . iij .  
signes ar put in a sheld by the maner of a pale . And then tha  
be calde signes palit . as here i thys figure it ap  
perith . And of hym that has theys armys ye  
shal say in latyn . **P**ortat iij . coronas de auro  
palatas in campo asorio . Et gallice sic . **I**  
l port d'asor et trois corones dor paleez . Anglice sic  
He berith asure and iij . crowns of golde palit .



**O**ff crowns in armys borne barrit here I Wilt informe yow

**H**old theys . iij . signes othar While be bor  
ne barrit here nold apperith in thys figure .  
And then of hym that beris theys armys ye shal  
say in latyn . **P**ortat tres coronas aureas i  
campo asorio . Et gallice sic . **A**z port d'asor  
et et trois corones barrez or . Et anglice sic .  
He berith asure & iij . crowns of golde barrit .





**O**ff .iij. Crowns borne in the Corners of the sheldr.

**C**ertainly thes .iij. crowns be borne in the most comyn Way in the corneris of the sheldr as here in this scocheon it apperith. And then ye most thus say that thes .iij. signes be borne in the corneris of the sheldr. for that is the most comune & the moost famous maner of bezyng of thes .iij. signes or ani maner signes. Therefore ye shall say that such a lord beith i la tyn in this Wyse as here folowys. **P**ortat de auro et tres coronas aureas . non opprimendo loca . Et gallice sic. **J**l port d'or et trois corones d'or. Et anglis ce sic. **T**he beith a fure and .iij. crowns of golde.



**O**ff fishys borne in armys in wyse Wyse here is a dextine

**A**neth wolte yit is founde in armys. for as mych as ther was a certan man that hight Petrus de rupibus in tyme passit the bisshop of Wyndchester: the Wyth baar i his armys iij Rochys after his owne naam in Wyth armys it is colout. Whether it is enogh to say in the blasynge of them: that he baar such iij fishys allone. as here in this scocheon. And certainly I thynke nay. for the rule goyng a fore. Not it is thus to be sayd: of the sayd Petrus in latyn. **P**ortant tres huiusmodi pisces argenteos natantes in campo nigro. Et gallice sic. **J**l port de Sable et trois Roches nâpantz argent. Et anglis ce sic. **T**he beith Sable and in Roches swymmyng of Siluer.



**A**nd then to tharmpes of Balfrid lury as  
 here nobl apperis i this figure And ye most say y<sup>e</sup>  
 be bare thus in latyn . **P**ortant tres lucios  
 aureos in campo rubeo . Et gallice sic . **I**  
 port de goibles et trois lucez dor . Anglice sic .



**T**he berith goibles and in lucee of golde .  
 the Wich certan blasfmg With olde declaracion here is enogh .  
 for the sayd fishes ar in thare propus placis as I sayd in the  
 rule afore .

**B**ut What shall be sayd of thys man then : the  
 Wich beris .ij. barbellis turnyng theyr backys to  
 geder as here apperis . Ye most say in latyn thys

**P**ortat duos barbillos aureos adinuicem i  
 ga vertentes in futo asorio puluerisato cu crua  
 bus cruciatis figituris de auro . Et gallice sic .



**I**l port asor pouree dez croses crocelez fichez et deux bar  
 buls dors an dors dor . Et anglice sic . **T**he berith asure  
 polverit With crossis crosletys pycche and .ij. barbellis of golde  
 backe to backe .

**O**ff armys the Wich as calde frectis here nobl I Wyll speke .

**A** Certan nobill baron that is to say the lorde audeley of  
 the Reame of Englonde baar in his armys a frecte .  
 the Wich certan frectis i mony armys of dyuerse gentill men ar  
 founde . othez While reede othez While golde . and othez While  
 blac othez While simple and othez While double othez While trypult

and other While it is multipliet ou all the sheld  
as here it apperith . and ye most vnderstande on  
gret differens by this armys bendit and theis  
armys the which be made With the forsayd frettes  
Wherefore it is to be markyt that in bendit armys  
the colouris contenynt equally ar dyuydit . Bot i  
thes frettis the felde alwai abyde wolt as here . and this for  
sayd lord audeley berie thus in latyn . **C**portat arma frec  
tata de auro in campo rubeo . Et gallice sic . **I**l port de gold  
lez vng frette dor . Anglice sic . **T**he berith golles and  
a frette of golde .



### Off armys haupng beestis salpentyng or rampyng .

**B**eestis in tharmys of dyuerse nobill ar borne rampyng  
as here i this figure folowynge apperith . of the which i the  
boke afore I haue made no mencion . And of  
hym that is possessor of theys armys ye shall  
say in latyn . **C**portat de rubro & vnum leo  
nem de argento . Et gallice sic . **I**l port  
de golles vng Leon saliantz argent . Et an  
glice sic . **T**he berith golles & a lion ram  
pyng of siluer . And he is cald a Lion rampyng for this cau  
se . for as mych as the right foote ascendyth to the right borne  
of the sheld . and the lefte foote descendyth in to the foote of the  
sheld as apperith i the figure . And this same man is obseruē  
in all beestis haupng .iii. feete . that is to say in lions leopar  
dis beas doggis With other like to them .

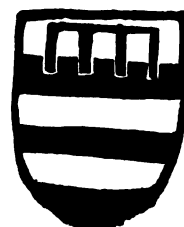
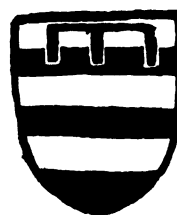


**O**ff armys barrit and of labellis borne in armys .

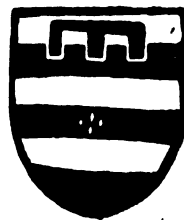
**F**irst note well thaz armys of the fader as he  
 be . and then the differancis as it shall  
 be shewyd . for certan thez be dyuse nobill men y<sup>e</sup>  
 Wich bere labellis in thez armys as it shall be  
 shewyd i figure after . for the Wich it is to be kna  
 we that sych labellis ar not propurly calde signes  
 in armys but dyfferencis of signes . that When it is so : that a  
 ny nobill man haue mony lefull getyn sonys : then y<sup>e</sup> first son  
 the Wich is his faders ayre : shall bere the hoolt  
 armys of his fader With sum lyttill differans as  
 here . to Whom specialli is geuyn a moon encre ;  
 syng . for that first son is in hope of augmen  
 tacion and encreffyng of his patrimony . & thes  
 differans may be sum littill molet or a crose croflet  
 or sych a like differans .



**T**he secunde broder shall bere the hoolt armys  
 of his fader With .iij. labellis to the differans and  
 in to the signe that he is the thyrde that beris thof  
 armys . **A**lso the thyrde broder if ther be any  
 shall bere .iiij. labellis i tokyn that he is the fou  
 rth : that berith thos armys of Whom the fader is  
 the first . the ayre is the secunde . and the secunde broder is y<sup>e</sup>  
 thyrde : that beris thos armys . And so folow  
 ys that the thyrde broder shall bere .iiij. labellis  
 as here it apperith in thys figure . And so for  
 the iff ther be moo brother ye shall encrey yowre  
 labellys after the forme afore rehersit .

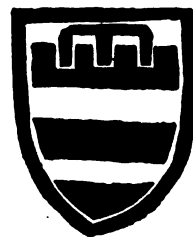


And the sunnys of thos same brother shall beere the same labellis. And i case that the secunde brother the which beareth iij. labellis haue .ij. sonnys. certainly the elder soon of thos .ij. the which is wyre to his fadyr shall beere the hoolt armys of his fadyr: With also many labellis as his fadyr did. With a litle differans as here it appeareth in thys fochon. And hys secunde brodyr shall beere the hoolt armys of hys fadyr With the same labellis as his fadyr baare and no moo With a bordure as here in thys figure next folowynge it shall be shewyd. and as it is reherst in the cha picture of borduris.



And iff ther be the thyrde brodyr then he shall beere hys faders armys With the same labellis and a bordure of an other coloure to the differans of hys brother as it shall be shewyd i thys fochon next folowynge

And the chyldre of thos men shall beere theyr differans not in theyr faders armys, but in borduris and dyspynsions dysuse.



And like as the chylder of the secunde brodyr beynge iij. labellis as dyspyned and dyfferent: by theyr signys and theyr borduris. So the chylder of the thyrde brodyr be: byng .iiij. labellis: beere the same armys that theyr fader did & also many labellis. And they ar dyfferent by theyr signys and theyr borduris as afore is reherst: and dysuse othyr. as othyr While a Lyon rampynge on parte red on othor blacke.

**N**ow certynly of all the signys the which ar founde i armys  
as of flosuris lurs and other menuellys tokenys I can  
not declare here : ther be so mony . Not ye shall knaw general  
ly that for all tharmys the which lyghly any man has seen i his  
days : ye haue rules sufficient as I be leue . to dyscerne and bla  
se any of theym : and it be so that ye be not in yolbre mynde to  
hasty or to slopste in the dyscernyng . Nes ye may not oueryn  
slopstly the forsayd rules . but dyligently haue theym in yolbre  
mynde . and be not to full of consaitis . For he that wilt hunt  
ij hais i oon oltre : or oon while oon . an othez while an othez  
lightly be losys both . Therfore take heed to the rules . If so be  
that they be not a generall doctrine : yet shall thai profete for  
thys sciens greely .

**M**erke ye wel thes questionys here now folowynge .

**O**f now to a question I wilt procede . and that is thys  
Whethyr tharmys of the grauntyng of a prynce or of o  
ther wordys as better or of spch dignyte : as armys of a manis  
propur auctorite take . When that it is lefult to eueri nobill  
man to take to hym armys at his plesure . For the which questi  
on it is to be knaw that . iij . maner of wyse we haue armys

**T**he first maner of wyse we haue oltre alme armis the wi  
ch we beere of oltre fadyz or of oltre moodyz or of oltre prydy  
cesessoris . the Wyth maner of beynge is comune and famous in  
the Wyth I wilt not stonde long . for that maner is best purt

**T**he secunde maner he haue armys by oltre merittys as  
wery playnly it apperith by the addicion of tharmys of Fraunce  
to tharmys of Englonde getyn by that moost nobull man pryn  
ce Edward the first getyn sone of kynge Edward the thirde y<sup>e</sup>  
tyme kynge of Englonde after the takinge of kynge John of  
Fraunce i the batell of Meweport . The which certan addicion hos  
lesult and rightwysli doon . and on the saame maner of whysse  
myght a poore archer haue take a pryncer or sum nobull lord . &  
so tharmys of that pryncer : by hym so take rightwisly he may  
put to hym and to his payris .

**O**n the thirde maner of whise he haue armys the which he  
bere by the grauntynge of a pryncer or of sum othez lordys .

**A**nd ye most knowe that thos armys the which he haue of  
the grauntynge of a pryncer or of a lordes resayue no question why  
that he berith thos same . for whi the pryncer wyll not : that sich  
a question be askyd . whi he gaue to any man sych an armys as  
it is playn in the lawe of nature and Ciuyl . For that same  
that pleses thez pryncer has the strengthe of lawe . bot if any mā  
bare thos armys afore . for that thyng the which is myne with  
a rightwys tityll with oltre deseynyng may not be take frome .  
ne the pryncer may not do hit rightwisly .

**T**he fourthe maner of whise he haue thos armys the which  
he take on oltre alone ppur auctorite . as in theys dayes open  
ly he se . how many poore men by thair grace fauoure laboure  
or deseynyng : ar made nobles . Sum by thez prudens . Sum  
bi thez māhod . sum bi thez strengthe . sum bi thez conig . sum bi od itayms

And of thes men many by theyr albe auctorite haue take ar-  
mys to be borne to theym and to ther baynes of Whoom it nedes  
not here to rehearse þe names . Neu the less armys that be so takyn  
they may lesfully and frely bee . Bot yit they be not of so grette  
dignyte and auctorite as thos armys the Which az grauntyd day  
by day by the auctorite of a pryncer or of a lorde . Yet armys bi  
a mannes proper auctorite take : if an othez man haue not wor-  
ne theym afore : be of strength enogh .

¶ And it is the oppynyon of moni men that an herod of armys  
may graue armys . Bot I say if any sych armys be borne by a  
ny herod geyn that thos armys be of no more auctorite then  
thos armys the Which be take by a mannes albe auctorite .

¶ Explicit .

¶ Here in this boke afore at content the bolys of haubynge  
and huntynge With othez plesuris dyuerse as in the boke apperis  
and also of Cootarmuris a nobill Werke . And here nobl en-  
dyth the boke of blasynge of armys translatyd and compytyd to  
gedyr at Seynt albons the yere from thincarnacion of othe  
lord Ihu Crist . M . CCCC . lxxxvi .



**¶** Hic finis diuſorū genioſis valde ſolitiſſi ſet iuētibz patebt



**¶** Sanctus albanus :





